



**FORTINET®**



# FortiAuthenticator - Administration Guide

VERSION 5.5

## **FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY**

<https://docs.fortinet.com>

## **FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE**

<https://video.fortinet.com>

## **FORTINET KNOWLEDGE BASE**

<http://kb.fortinet.com>

## **FORTINET BLOG**

<https://blog.fortinet.com>

## **CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT**

<https://support.fortinet.com>

## **FORTINET COOKBOOK**

<http://cookbook.fortinet.com>

## **FORTINET NSE INSTITUTE (TRAINING)**

<https://training.fortinet.com/>

## **FORTIGUARD CENTER**

<https://fortiguard.com>

## **FORTICAST**

<http://forticast.fortinet.com>

## **END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT AND PRIVACY POLICY**

<https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf>

<https://www.fortinet.com/corporate/about-us/privacy.html>

## **FEEDBACK**

Email: [techdocs@fortinet.com](mailto:techdocs@fortinet.com)



December 13, 2018

FortiAuthenticator - Administration Guide

23-550-522805-20181130

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Change log</b>	<b>9</b>
What's new in FortiAuthenticator 5.5	10
SAML SP SSO: Multi-tenancy support	10
REST API enhancements	10
Token self-provisioning by group option relocated	10
User Lookup	10
Automated Firmware Upgrade for HA A-P Clusters	11
Users Audit Report enhancements	11
Merge Captive Portal into Guest Portals	11
SAML SP SSO: Select assertion for username	11
SAML SP SSO: Disclaimer agreement page	11
Wildcard MAC devices	11
HA maintenance mode	12
Guest portals: Self-registration enhancements	12
Enhance FSSO DNS lookups	12
Syslog matching rule for FortiNAC	12
VMware tools	12
NTP IPv6 support	12
CA2 certificate support	13
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>14</b>
Before you begin	15
How this guide is organized	16
Registering your Fortinet product	16
<b>Setup</b>	<b>17</b>
Initial setup	17
FortiAuthenticator VM setup	17
Administrative access	18
Adding FortiAuthenticator to your network	19
Maintenance	20
Backing up the configuration	20
Upgrading the firmware	21
Licensing	21
Swapping hard disks	21
CLI commands	22

Standardized CLI .....	25
Troubleshooting .....	25
FortiAuthenticator settings .....	25
FortiGate settings .....	26
<b>System .....</b>	<b>27</b>
Dashboard .....	27
Customizing the dashboard .....	28
System information widget .....	29
System resources widget .....	33
Authentication activity widget .....	33
User inventory widget .....	33
License information widget .....	33
Disk monitor widget .....	33
Top user lockouts widget .....	34
User lookup .....	34
Network .....	35
Interfaces .....	35
DNS .....	36
Static routing .....	37
Packet capture .....	38
Administration .....	39
System access .....	39
High availability .....	40
Firmware upgrade .....	45
Configuring auto-backup .....	45
SNMP .....	46
Licensing .....	49
FortiGuard .....	50
FTP servers .....	51
Admin profiles .....	52
Messaging .....	52
SMTP servers .....	52
Email services .....	54
SMS gateways .....	55
<b>Authentication .....</b>	<b>58</b>
What to configure .....	58
Password-based authentication .....	58
Two-factor authentication .....	59
Authentication servers .....	59
Machine authentication .....	60
User account policies .....	61
General .....	61

Lockouts.....	62
Passwords.....	63
Custom user fields.....	65
Tokens.....	65
User management.....	68
Administrators.....	68
Local users.....	69
Remote users.....	77
Remote user sync rules.....	80
Guest users.....	82
User groups.....	83
Usage profile.....	84
Organizations.....	85
Realms.....	86
FortiTokens.....	87
MAC devices.....	88
RADIUS attributes.....	89
FortiToken physical device and FortiToken Mobile.....	89
FortiAuthenticator and FortiTokens.....	90
Monitoring FortiTokens.....	91
FortiToken device maintenance.....	91
FortiToken drift adjustment.....	91
Self-service portal.....	92
General.....	92
Access control.....	92
Self-registration.....	93
Token self-provisioning.....	95
Replacement messages.....	97
Device self-enrollment.....	98
Guest portals.....	99
Portals.....	100
Rules.....	105
Replacement messages.....	106
Smart Connect profiles.....	107
Remote authentication servers.....	109
General.....	109
LDAP.....	110
RADIUS.....	114
RADIUS service.....	115
Clients.....	116
Client profile attributes.....	118
Extensible Authentication Protocol.....	119

Services .....	119
Custom dictionaries .....	119
LDAP service .....	121
General .....	121
Directory tree overview .....	121
Creating the directory tree .....	122
Configuring a FortiGate unit for FortiAuthenticator LDAP .....	125
SAML IdP .....	125
General .....	126
Service providers .....	127
FortiAuthenticator agents .....	130
FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows .....	130
FortiAuthenticator Agent for Outlook Web Access .....	132
<b>Port-based network access control .....</b>	<b>133</b>
Extensible Authentication Protocol .....	133
FortiAuthenticator and EAP .....	134
FortiAuthenticator unit configuration .....	134
Configuring certificates for EAP .....	134
Configuring switches and wireless controllers to use 802.1X authentication .....	135
Non-compliant devices .....	135
<b>Fortinet Single Sign-On .....</b>	<b>137</b>
Domain controller polling .....	137
Windows management instrumentation polling .....	137
General settings .....	138
Configuring FortiGate units for FSSO .....	143
Portal services .....	143
Kerberos .....	145
SAML authentication .....	146
Windows event log sources .....	149
RADIUS accounting .....	150
Syslog .....	152
Syslog sources .....	152
Matching rules .....	153
Predefined rules .....	154
Fine-grained controls .....	156
SSO users and groups .....	156
FortiGate filtering .....	158
IP filtering rules .....	159
Tiered architecture .....	160
FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent .....	161
Fake client protection .....	161
<b>RADIUS Single Sign-On .....</b>	<b>162</b>

RADIUS accounting proxy.....	162
General.....	162
Rule sets.....	163
Sources.....	165
Destinations.....	166
<b>Monitoring.....</b>	<b>167</b>
SSO.....	167
Domains.....	167
SSO sessions.....	167
Windows event log sources.....	168
FortiGates.....	168
DC/TS agents.....	168
NTLM statistics.....	168
Authentication.....	168
Locked-out users.....	169
RADIUS sessions.....	169
Windows AD.....	169
Windows device logins.....	170
Learned RADIUS users.....	170
<b>Certificate management.....</b>	<b>171</b>
Policies.....	171
Certificate expiry.....	171
End entities.....	172
Certificate authorities.....	181
Local CAs.....	181
Certificate revocations lists.....	188
Trusted CAs.....	189
SCEP.....	189
General.....	190
Enrollment requests.....	190
<b>Logging.....</b>	<b>196</b>
Log access.....	196
Log configuration.....	198
Log settings.....	198
Syslog servers.....	200
Audit reports.....	201
Users audit.....	201
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>203</b>
Troubleshooting.....	203
Debug logs.....	204
RADIUS debugging.....	205
TCP stack hardening.....	206

**LDAP filter syntax**..... **207**

    Examples.....207

    Caveats.....208



## Change log

Date	Change Description
December 13, 2018	FortiAuthenticator 5.5 document release.

## What's new in FortiAuthenticator 5.5

The following list contains new and expanded features added in FortiAuthenticator 5.5.

### SAML SP SSO: Multi-tenancy support

Multi-tenancy support is added to FortiAuthenticator, where each tenant can be a FortiGate or a specific VDOM within a FortiGate:

- SAML SP SSO supports multiple SAML SP portals
- Each SAML SP portal can point to a different SAML IdP
- maintain multiple SSO sessions list
- each SSO session list contains the logged-in users for a set of domains
- each SSO session list has its own IP space
- IP spaces of different SSO session lists can overlap

### REST API enhancements

FortiAuthenticator sees the following REST API enhancements:

#### Verify Security Question

Security question and password reset API is available for local and LDAP users. Using API calls, you can:

- set the password recovery question and answer
- read the password recovery question
- verify the password recovery answer
- reset the password

#### Certificate management API

An API is added to manage user certificates. The API can be used to renew and revoke user certificates.

#### REST API for syslog

RESTful API support is added for configuring syslog servers, and for configuring sending logs to a syslog server.

### Token self-provisioning by group option relocated

The option to allow token self-provisioning by user group is relocated to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Token self-provisioning**. Token self-provisioning can also be configured from **Authentication > Guest Portals > Portals**. See [Token self-provisioning](#) for more information,

### User Lookup

Administrators can perform a user search to easily monitor the ongoing activity of a specific user. The User Lookup page provides a consolidated view of a user's information and recent activities.

Searches for users can be performed under **System > Dashboard > User Lookup**. See [User lookup](#) for more information.

## Automated Firmware Upgrade for HA A-P Clusters

When upgrading the firmware of the active unit in an HA master cluster, the administrator has the option to perform a coordinated upgrade of both cluster members. If BOTH is selected, the firmware upgrade is performed on the passive unit first. Once the first upgrade is complete and the passive unit backs up and syncs with the active unit, the firmware upgrade is performed on the active unit.

Automated firmware upgrades for HA A-P clusters can be performed under **System > Administration > Firmware Upgrade**. See [Firmware upgrade](#) for more information.

## Users Audit Report enhancements

Additional fields have been added to users audit reports. Reports now include fields that detail the date and time of account creation, date and time of last login, type of token-based authentication, and token information.

Download user audit reports under **Logging > Audit Reports > Users Audit**. See [Users audit](#) for more information.

## Merge Captive Portal into Guest Portals

Captive Portals have merged with Guest Portals. Existing Captive Portals will convert to a Guest Portal configuration following a firmware upgrade. The look and function of converted portals will remain unchanged.

## SAML SP SSO: Select assertion for username

The SAML SP configuration offers administrators the option to specify which SAML assertion to extract the username from.

## SAML SP SSO: Disclaimer agreement page

When enabled, a SAML SP SSO end-user is required to agree to a disclaimer before being redirected to the SAML IdP for authentication.

The disclaimer agreement page is enabled under **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > SAML Authentication**. See [SAML authentication](#) for more information.

Customize the Login Disclaimer Page and Disclaimer Denied Page under **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Replacement Messages**. See [Replacement messages](#) for more information.

## Wildcard MAC devices

When creating a new MAC-based authentication device, MAC addresses can be defined using wildcard capability to allow access to all devices from a specific manufacturer. Instead of defining a full MAC address, you define only the top 3 bytes (e.g. 11:22:33).

Define MAC addresses using wildcard capability under **Authentication > User Management > MAC Devices**. See [Non-compliant devices](#) for more information.

## HA maintenance mode

If maintenance needs to be performed on one of the FortiAuthenticator units in an HA master cluster, an administrator can use maintenance mode to remove the unit from the cluster.

Maintenance mode is enabled under **System > Administration > High Availability**. See [High availability](#) for more information.

## Guest portals: Self-registration enhancements

FortiAuthenticator Guest Portals are enhanced to improve the flexibility of the self-registration process. When configuring the self-registration pre-login services, administrators can:

- allow self-registration using only SMS or only email
- allow self-registration without SMS or email
- allow self-registering users to select SMS or email

Guest portal self-registration settings are configured under **Authentication > Guest Portals > Portals**. See [Portals](#) for more information.

## Enhance FSSO DNS lookups

To improve FSSO DNS lookups, the behavior of the DNS cache on FortiAuthenticator can be configured under **System > Network > DNS**. See [DNS](#) for more information.

## Syslog matching rule for FortiNAC

FortiAuthenticator is preconfigured with a FSSO syslog matching rule for the FortiNAC. Syslog messages can be sent from the FortiNAC when there is a device register, login, or unregister event on the network, and the FortiAuthenticator can use these syslog messages for FSSO.

Syslog matching rules can be configured under **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > Syslog Sources**. See [Predefined rules](#) for more information.

## VMware tools

The open-vm-tools package is integrated into the VMware-based FortiAuthenticator-VM. The VMWare tools package allows for additional features to be supported on the FortiAuthenticator-VM for the VMware server operator. See [open-vm-tools](#) for more information.

## NTP IPv6 support

Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers with an IPv6 address can be configured to synchronize the FortiAuthenticator system time.

The FortiAuthenticator system time can be configured under **System > Dashboard > Status**. See [Configuring the system date, time, and time zone](#) for more information.

## CA2 certificate support

Support is added for a second firmware certificate, signed by Fortinet's CA2 (FortiAuthenticator-VM only).

# Introduction

The FortiAuthenticator device is an identity and access management solution. Identity and access management solutions are an important part of an enterprise network, providing access to protected network assets and tracking user activities to comply with security policies.

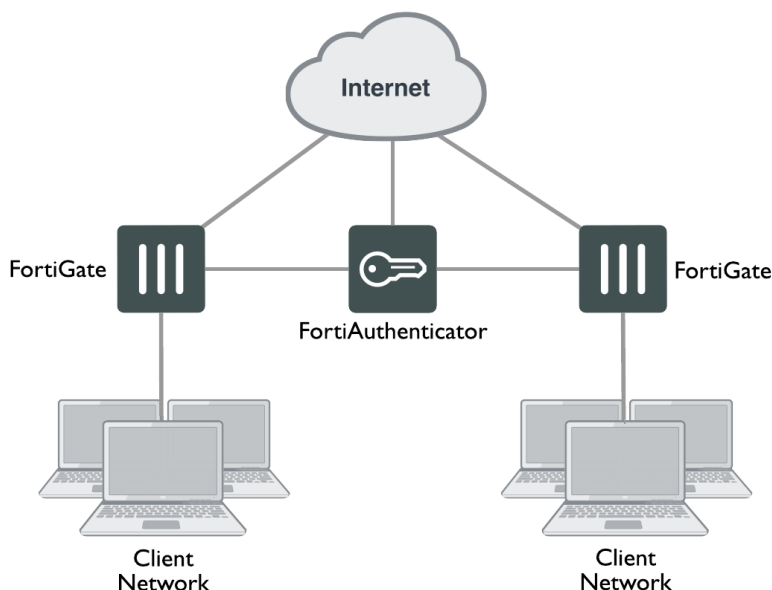
FortiAuthenticator provides user identity services to the Fortinet product range, as well as third-party devices.

FortiAuthenticator delivers multiple features including:

- **Authentication:** FortiAuthenticator includes Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) and Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server authentication methods, and Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML), which is used for exchanging authentication and authorization data between an Identity Provider (IdP) and a Service Provider (SP).
- **Two-Factor Authentication:** FortiAuthenticator can act as a two-factor authentication server with support for one-time passwords (OTP) using FortiToken Hardware (including FortiToken 202 SHA-256 tokens), FortiToken Mobile, Short Message Service (SMS), or email. FortiAuthenticator two-factor authentication is compatible with any system which supports RADIUS.
- **IEEE802.1X Support:** FortiAuthenticator supports 802.1X for use in FortiGate Wireless and Wired networks.
- **User Identification:** FortiAuthenticator can identify users through multiple data sources, including Active Directory (AD), desktop client, guest portal logon, RADIUS accounting, Kerberos, and a Representational State Transfer (REST) API. It can then communicate this information to FortiGate or FortiMail units for use in identity based policies.
- **Certificate Management:** FortiAuthenticator can create and sign digital certificates for use, for example, in FortiGate VPNs and with the FortiToken 300 USB certificate store.
- **Integration:** FortiAuthenticator can integrate with third-party RADIUS, LDAP, and SAML authentication systems, allowing you to reuse existing information sources. The REST API can also be used to integrate with external provisioning systems.

FortiAuthenticator is a critical system, and should be isolated on a network interface that is separated from other hosts to facilitate server-related firewall protection. Be sure to take steps to prevent unauthorized access to the FortiAuthenticator.

## FortiAuthenticator on a multiple FortiGate unit network



The FortiAuthenticator series of identity and access management appliances complement the FortiToken range of two-factor authentication tokens for secure remote access. FortiAuthenticator allows you to extend the support for FortiTokens across your enterprise by enabling authentication with multiple FortiGate appliances and third-party devices. FortiAuthenticator and FortiToken deliver cost effective, scalable, secure authentication to your entire network infrastructure.

The FortiAuthenticator device provides an easy-to-configure remote authentication option for FortiGate users. Additionally, it can replace the Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) Agent on a Windows AD network.

For more information about FortiTokens, see the [FortiToken information page](#) on the Fortinet web site.

## Before you begin

Before you begin using this guide, please ensure that:

- You have administrative access to the GUI and/or CLI.  
For details of how to accomplish this, see the QuickStart Guide provided with your product, or online at <http://docs.fortinet.com/FortiAuthenticator/hardware>.
- FortiAuthenticator is integrated into your network.
- The operation mode has been configured.
- The system time, DNS settings, administrator password, and network interfaces have been configured.



Network Time Protocol (NTP) is critical for the time to be accurate and stable for the Time-based One-time Password (TOTP) method used in two-factor authentication to function correctly. See [Configuring the system time, time zone, and date on page 1](#).

- Any third-party software or servers have been configured using their documentation.

While using the instructions in this guide, note that administrators are assumed to have all permissions, unless otherwise specified. Some restrictions will apply to administrators with limited permissions.

## How this guide is organized

This FortiAuthenticator Administration Guide contains the following sections:

- [Setup](#) describes initial setup for standalone and HA cluster FortiAuthenticator configurations.
- [System](#) describes the options available in the **System** menu tree, including network configuration, administration settings, and messaging settings.
- [Authentication](#) describes how to configure built-in and remote authentication servers and manage users and user groups.
- [Port-based network access control \(PNAC\)](#) describes how to configure FortiAuthenticator for IEEE 802.1X Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) authentication methods, Bring Your Own Device (BYOD), and MAC-based device authentication.
- [Fortinet Single Sign-On \(FSSO\)](#) describes how to use FortiAuthenticator in a single sign-on (SSO) environment.
- [RADIUS Single Sign-On \(RSSO\)](#) describes how to use FortiAuthenticator RADIUS accounting proxy.
- [Monitoring](#) describes how to monitor SSO and authentication information.
- [Certificate management](#) describes how to manage X.509 certificates and how to set up FortiAuthenticator to act as a certificate authority (CA).
- [Logging](#) describes how to view the logs on your FortiAuthenticator unit.
- [Troubleshooting](#) provides suggestions to resolve common problems.
- [LDAP filter syntax](#) outlines some basic filter syntax that is used to select users and groups in LDAP User Import, Dynamic LDAP Groups, and Remote User Sync Rules.

## Registering your Fortinet product

Before you begin configuring and customizing features, take a moment to register your Fortinet product at the [Fortinet Support](#) website. Many Fortinet customer services such as firmware updates, technical support, FortiGuard Antivirus, and other FortiGuard services require product registration.



# Setup

For information about installing FortiAuthenticator and accessing the CLI or GUI, refer to the Quick Start Guide provided with your unit.

This chapter provides basic setup information for getting started with your FortiAuthenticator device. For more detailed information about specific system options, see [System on page 1](#).

## Initial setup

The following section provides information about setting up the virtual machine (VM) version of FortiAuthenticator.

### FortiAuthenticator VM setup

Before using FortiAuthenticator-VM, you need to install the VMware application to host the FortiAuthenticator-VM device. The installation instructions for FortiAuthenticator-VM assume you are familiar with VMware products and terminology.

#### System requirements

FortiAuthenticator-VM is compatible with HyperV Windows Server 2012 and 2016. For information on the FortiAuthenticator-VM system requirements, please see the [FortiAuthenticator datasheet](#).



FortiAuthenticator-VM has kernel support for more than 4GB of RAM in VM images. However, this support also depends on the VM player version. For more information, see [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\\_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1014006](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1014006)

The default **Hardware Version** is 4 in order to support the widest base of VM players. However you can modify the VM Hardware Version by editing the following line in the FortiAuthenticator-VM.vmx file:

```
virtualHW.version = "4"
```



FortiAuthenticator 5.3+ includes a KVM image for loading onto KVM servers, such as Linux running Virtual Machine Manager, and on FortiHypervisor.

### FortiAuthenticator-VM image installation and initial setup

The following procedure describes setup on VMware Fusion.

#### To set up the FortiAuthenticator VM image:

1. Download the VM image zip file to the local computer where VMware is installed.
2. Extract the files from the zip file into a folder.

3. In your VMware software, go to **File > Open**.
4. Navigate to the expanded VM image folder, select the **FortiAuthenticator-VM.vmx** file, and select **Open**. VMware will install and start FortiAuthenticator-VM. This process can take a minute or two to complete.
5. At the FortiAuthenticator login prompt, enter `admin` and press **Enter**. By default, there is no password.
6. At the CLI prompt enter the following commands:

```
config system interface
  edit port1
    set ip <ip-address>/<netmask>
    set allowaccess https ssh
  next
end
config router static
  edit 0
    set device port1
    set dst 0.0.0.0/0
    set gateway <ip-gateway>
  next
end
```

Substitute your own desired FortiAuthenticator IP address and default gateway.

You can now connect to the GUI at the IP address you set for port 1.



Suspending the FortiAuthenticator-VM can have unintended consequences. Fortinet recommends that you do not use the suspend feature of VMware. Instead, shut down the virtual FortiAuthenticator system using the GUI or CLI, and then shut down the virtual machine using the VMware console.

## Administrative access

Administrative access is enabled by default on port 1. Using the GUI, you can enable administrative access on other ports if necessary.

### To add administrative access to an interface:

1. Go to **System > Network > Interfaces** and select the interface you need to add administrative access to. See [Interfaces on page 1](#) for more information.
2. Under **Access Rights**, for **Admin access**, select the types of access to allow.
3. Select **OK**.

## GUI access

To use the GUI, point your browser to the IP address of port 1 (192.168.1.99 by default). For example, enter the following in the URL box:

```
https://192.168.1.99
```

Enter `admin` as the **User Name** and leave the **Password** field blank.



HTTP access is not enabled by default. To enable access, use the `set ha-mgmt-access` command in the CLI (see [CLI commands on page 1](#)), or enable HTTP access on the interface in the GUI (see [Interfaces on page 1](#)).

For security reasons, the host or domain names that the GUI responds to are restricted. The list of trusted hosts is automatically generated from the following:

- Configured hostname.
- Configured DNS domain name.
- Network interface IP addresses that have HTTP or HTTPS enabled.
- HA management IP addresses.

Additional IP addresses and host or domain names that the GUI responded to can be defined in the **GUI Access** settings. See [GUI access on page 1](#) for more information.

## Telnet

CLI access is available using telnet to the port1 interface IP address (192.168.1.99 by default). Use the telnet -K option so that telnet does not attempt to log on using your user ID. For example:

```
$ telnet -K 192.168.1.99
```

At the FortiAuthenticator login prompt, enter `admin`. By default there is no password. When you are finished, use the `exit` command to end the telnet session.



CLI access using Telnet is not enabled by default. To enable access, use the `set ha-mgmt-access` command in the CLI (see [CLI commands on page 1](#)), or enable Telnet access on the interface in the GUI (see [Interfaces on page 1](#)).

## SSH

SSH provides secure access to the CLI. Connect to the port1 interface IP address (192.168.1.99 by default). Specify the user name `admin` or SSH will attempt to log on with your user name. For example:

```
$ ssh admin@192.168.1.99
```

By default there is no password. When you are finished, use the `exit` command to end the session.

Note that, after three failed login attempts, the interface/connection will reset, and that SSH timeout is set to 60 seconds following an incomplete login or broken session.

## Adding FortiAuthenticator to your network

Before setting up FortiAuthenticator, there are some requirements for your network:

- You must have security policies that allow traffic between the client network and the subnet of the FortiAuthenticator.
- You must ensure that the following ports are open in the security policies between the FortiAuthenticator and authentication clients, in addition to management protocols such as HTTP, HTTPS, telnet, SSH, ping, and other protocols you may choose to allow:
  - UDP/161 (SNMP)
  - UDP/1812 (RADIUS Auth)
  - UDP/1813 (RADIUS Accounting)
  - TCP/389 (LDAP)
  - TCP/636 (LDAPS)

- TCP/8000 (FortiGate FSSO)
- TCP/2560 (OCSP)
- TCP/8001 (FortiClient Single Sign-On Mobility Agent FSSO)
- TCP/8002 (DC/TS Agent FSSO)
- TCP/8003 (Hierarchical FSSO)

#### To setup FortiAuthenticator on your network:

1. Log in to the GUI with the username `admin` and no password.
2. Go to **System > Network > DNS**. Enter your internal network primary and secondary name server IP addresses. This is essential for successful FSSO operation. See [DNS on page 1](#) for more information.
3. Go to **System > Network > Static Routing** and create a default route (IP/Mask 0.0.0.0/0) to your network gateway on the interface that connects to the gateway. See [Static routing on page 1](#) for more information.
4. Go to **System > Dashboard > Status**.
5. In the **System Information** widget select **Change** in the **System Time** field, and select your **Time zone** from the list.
6. Either enable the NTP or manually enter the date and time. See [Configuring the system time, time zone, and date on page 1](#) for more information.  
Enter a new time and date by either typing it manually, selecting **Today** or **Now**, or select the calendar or clock icons.



If you will be using FortiToken devices, Fortinet strongly recommends using NTP. FortiToken Time based authentication tokens are dependent on an accurate system clock.

7. Select **OK**.
8. If the FortiAuthenticator is connected to additional subnets, configure additional FortiAuthenticator interfaces as required. See [Interfaces on page 1](#) for more information.

## Maintenance

System maintenance tasks include:

- [Backing up the configuration](#)
- [Upgrading the firmware](#)
- [Licensing](#)
- [Swapping hard disks](#)

### Backing up the configuration

You can back up the configuration of FortiAuthenticator to your local computer. See [Backing up and restoring the configuration on page 1](#) for more information.

Automatic system configuration backup can also be configured. See [Automatic backup on page 1](#) for information.

## Upgrading the firmware

Periodically, Fortinet issues firmware upgrades that fix known issues, add new features and functionality, and generally improve your FortiAuthenticator experience. See [Firmware on page 1](#) for more information.

Before proceeding to upgrade your system, Fortinet recommends you back up your configuration. Please follow the procedure detailed in [Backing up and restoring the configuration on page 1](#).

To upgrade the firmware, you must first register your FortiAuthenticator with Fortinet. See [Registering your Fortinet product on page 1](#) for more information.

### To upgrade FortiAuthenticator firmware:

1. Download the latest firmware to your local computer from the [Fortinet Support](#) website.
2. Go to **System > Administration > Firmware Upgrade**.
3. Select **Choose File** and locate the firmware image on your local computer.
4. Select **OK**.



When you select **OK**, the firmware image will upload from your local computer to the FortiAuthenticator device, which will then reboot. You will experience a short period of time during this reboot when the FortiAuthenticator device is offline and unavailable for authentication.

## Licensing

FortiAuthenticator-VM works in evaluation mode until it is licensed. The license is valid only if one of the FortiAuthenticator interfaces is set to the IP address specified in the license. See [Licensing on page 1](#) for more information.

### To license FortiAuthenticator:

1. Go to **System > Administration > Licensing**.
2. Select **Choose File** and locate on your local computer the license file you received from Fortinet.
3. Select **OK**.

## Swapping hard disks

If a hard disk on a FortiAuthenticator unit fails, it must be replaced. On FortiAuthenticator devices that support hardware RAID, the hard disk can be replaced while the unit is still running - known as hot swapping. On FortiAuthenticator units with software RAID, the device must be shutdown prior to exchanging the hard disk.

To identify the failed hard disk, go to **System > Dashboard > Status** and view the **Disk Monitor** widget. When a hard disk fails, the RAID status shows as **Degraded** and the RAID status icon displays a warning indication in yellow. In the RAID graphic, the failed hard disk will be missing from the RAID array or will show with a blue question mark symbol.



Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage FortiAuthenticator equipment. Only perform the procedures described in this document from an ESD workstation. If no such station is available, you can provide some ESD protection by wearing an anti-static wrist or ankle strap and attaching it to an ESD connector or to a metal part of a FortiAuthenticator chassis.



When replacing a hard disk, you need to first verify that the new disk is the same size as those supplied by Fortinet and has at least the same capacity as the old one in the FortiAuthenticator unit. Installing a smaller hard disk will affect the RAID setup and may cause data loss. Due to possible differences in sector layout between disks, the only way to guarantee that two disks have the same size is to use the same brand and model.

The size provided by the hard drive manufacturer for a given disk model is only an approximation. The exact size is determined by the number of sectors present on the disk.

### To hot swap a hard disk on a device that supports hardware RAID:

1. Remove the faulty hard disk.
2. Install a new disk in the same slot from which the failed disk was removed.  
The **Disk Monitor** widget updates. In the RAID graphic, a blue question mark symbol appears in the representative slot where the new hard disk is installed. If the blue question mark symbol does not appear shortly after the new disk is installed, in the widget, click **Refresh** to refresh the RAID status.
3. In the RAID graphic, click the blue question mark symbol.  
The hard disk re-synchronization/rebuild process is initialized. This process can take over an hour to complete, depending on the size of the hard disk. The RAID status changes to display the progress of the RAID re-synchronization/rebuild.

Once the re-synchronization/rebuild process is complete, the RAID status changes to OK and the RAID status icon displays a green checkmark.

## CLI commands

The FortiAuthenticator has CLI commands that are accessed using SSH or Telnet, or through the CLI console if a FortiAuthenticator is installed on a FortiHypervisor. The commands can be used to initially configure the unit, perform a factory reset, or reset the values if the GUI is not accessible.

Command	Description
<code>help</code>	Display list of valid CLI commands. You can also enter ? for help.
<code>exit</code>	Terminate the CLI session.
<code>show</code>	Display bootstrap configuration.

Command	Description
<code>set port1-ip &lt;IP/netmask&gt;</code>	Enter the IPv4 address and netmask for the port1 interface. Netmask is expected in the /xx format, for example 192.168.0.1/24. Once this port is configured, you can use the GUI to configure the remaining ports.
<code>set default-gw &lt;IP&gt;</code>	Enter the IPv4 address of the default gateway for this interface. This is the default route for this interface.
<code>set date &lt;YYYY-MM-DD&gt;</code>	Enter the current date. Valid format is four digit year, two digit month, and two digit day. For example: <code>set date 2014-08-12</code> sets the date to August 12, 2014.
<code>set time &lt;HH:MM:SS&gt;</code>	Enter the current time. Valid format is two digits each for hours, minutes, and seconds. 24-hour clock is used. For example 15:10:00 is 3:10pm.
<code>set tz &lt;timezone_index&gt;</code>	Enter the current time zone using the time zone index. To see a list of index numbers and their corresponding time zones, enter <code>set tz ?</code> .
<code>set ha-mode {enable   disable}</code>	Enable or disable (default) HA mode.
<code>set ha-port &lt;interface&gt;</code>	Select a network interface to use for communication between the two cluster members. This interface must not already have an IP address assigned and it cannot be used for authentication services. Both units must use the same interface for HA communication.
<code>set ha-priority {high   low}</code>	Set to <code>low</code> on one unit and <code>high</code> on the other. Normally, the unit with High priority is the master unit.
<code>set ha-password &lt;password&gt;</code>	Set the HA password.
<code>set ha-mgmt-ip &lt;IP/netmask&gt;</code>	Enter the IP address, with netmask, that this unit uses for HA related communication with the other FortiAuthenticator unit (e.g. 1.2.3.4/24.  The two units must have different addresses. Usually, you should assign addresses on the same private subnet.
<code>set ha-mgmt-access {ssh   https   http   telnet}</code>	Select the types of administrative access to allow.
<code>set ha-dbg-level &lt;level&gt;</code>	Enter the level for HA service debug logs. Range: -4 (fatal) to 4 (debug high). Default: -2 (warn).

Command	Description
<code>unset &lt;setting&gt;</code>	Restore default value. For each <code>set</code> command listed above, there is an <code>unset</code> command, for example <code>unset port1-ip</code> .
<code>raid-add-disk &lt;slot&gt;</code>	Add a disk to a degraded RAID array.
<code>ha-rebuild</code>	Rebuild the configuration database from scratch using the HA peer's configuration.
<code>restore-admin</code>	Restore factory reset's admin access settings to the port1 network interface.
<code>reboot</code>	Perform a hard restart of FortiAuthenticator. All sessions will be terminated. The unit will go offline and there will be a delay while it restarts.
<code>factory-reset</code>	Enter this command to reset the FortiAuthenticator settings to factory default settings. This includes clearing the user database. This procedure deletes all changes that you have made to the FortiAuthenticator configuration and reverts the system to its original configuration, including resetting interface addresses.
<code>shutdown</code>	Turn off the FortiAuthenticator.
<code>status</code>	Display basic system status information including firmware version, build number, serial number of the unit, and system time.
<code>hardware-info</code>	Display general hardware status information.
<code>disk-attributes</code>	Display system disk attributes.
<code>disk-errors</code>	Display any system disk errors.
<code>disk-health</code>	Display disk health information.
<code>disk-info</code>	Display disk hardware status information.
<code>raid-hwinfo</code>	Display RAID hardware status information.
<code>nslookup</code>	Basic tool for DNS debugging.
<code>dig</code>	Advanced DNS debugging.
<code>ping</code>	Test network connectivity to another network host.
<code>tcpdump</code>	Examine local network traffic.



Command	Description
<code>tcpdumpfile</code>	<p>Same as <code>tcpdump</code>, but the output is written to a downloadable file that can be downloaded in the debug logs.</p> <p>Debug logs can be accessed via your web browser by navigating to <code>https://&lt;FortiAuthenticator-IP-Address&gt;/debug</code>. For more information, see <a href="#">Debug logs on page 1</a>.</p>
<code>traceroute</code>	Examine the route taken to another network host.

## Standardized CLI

With the release of version 5.0, FortiAuthenticator's CLI commands (concerning basic configuration) have become more similar to other product's CLI, such as the commands commonly found in FortiOS.

The following initial-setup commands have been introduced to FortiAuthenticator; note that all existing CLI commands found in the FortiAuthenticator now fall under the following:

- `config router static`
- `config system dns`
- `config system global`
- `config system ha`
- `config system interface`



The FortiAuthenticator VM's console allows scrolling up and down through the CLI output by using **Shift+PageUp** and **Shift+PageDown**.

Another tip to be aware of is, exactly like FortiOS, the **?** key can be used to display all possible options available to you, depending upon where you are hierarchically-situated.

Note that `get`, `execute`, and `diagnose` commands are also available.

## Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting includes useful tips and commands to help deal with issues that may occur. For additional help, contact customer support. See [Troubleshooting on page 1](#) for more information.

If you have issues when attempting authentication on a FortiGate unit using the FortiAuthenticator, there are some FortiAuthenticator and FortiGate settings to check.

In addition to these settings you can use log entries, monitors, and debugging information to determine more knowledge about your authentication problems. For help with FortiAuthenticator logging, see [Logging on page 1](#). For help with FortiGate troubleshooting, see the [FortiOS Handbook](#) for troubleshooting user authentication.

## FortiAuthenticator settings

When checking FortiAuthenticator settings, you should ensure that:

- There is an authentication client entry for the FortiGate unit (see [RADIUS service on page 1](#)).
- The user trying to authenticate has a valid active account that is not disabled, and that the username and password are entered correctly.
- The user account allows RADIUS authentication if RADIUS is enabled on the FortiGate unit.
- The FortiGate unit can communicate with FortiAuthenticator, on the required ports:
  - RADIUS Authentication: UDP/1812
  - LDAP: TCP/389
- The user account exists either:
  - as a local user on the FortiAuthenticator (if using RADIUS authentication),
  - in the local LDAP directory (if using local LDAP authentication),
  - and/or in the remote LDAP directory (if using RADIUS authentication with remote LDAP password validation).
- The user is a member in the expected user groups and these user groups are allowed to communicate on the authentication client (e.g. the FortiGate).
- If authentication fails with the log error "bad password", try resetting the password. If this fails, verify that the pre-shared secret is identical on both FortiAuthenticator and the authentication client.

If FortiToken authentication is failing, try the following:

- Verify that the token is correctly synchronized.
- Remove the token from the user authentication configuration and verify authentication works when the token is not present.
- Attempt to log into the FortiAuthenticator with the user credentials.

These steps enable the administrator to identify whether the problem is with the FortiGate unit, the credentials, or the FortiToken.

## FortiGate settings

When checking FortiGate authentication settings, you should ensure that:

- The user has membership in the required user groups and identity-based security policies.
- There is a valid entry for the FortiAuthenticator device as a remote RADIUS or LDAP server.
- The user is configured either explicitly or as a wildcard user.

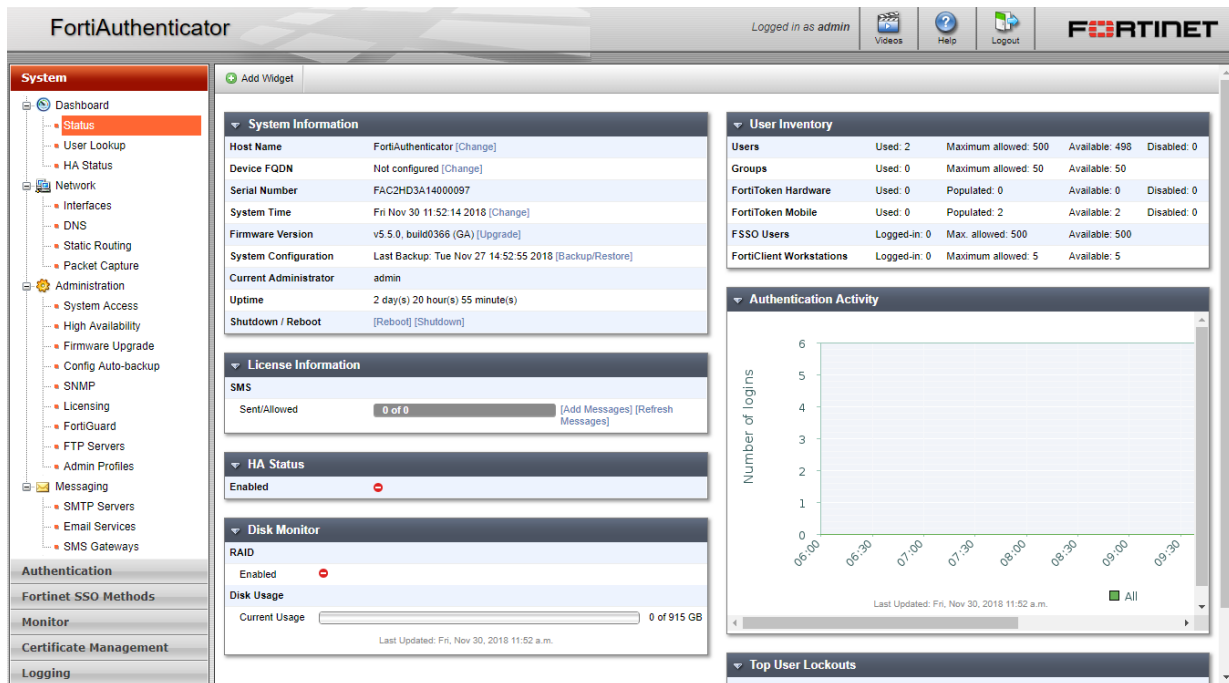
# System

The **System** tab enables you to manage and configure the basic system options for FortiAuthenticator. This includes the basic network settings to connect the device to the corporate network, the configuration of administrators and their access privileges, managing and updating firmware for the device, and managing messaging servers and services.

## Dashboard

When you select the **System** tab, it automatically opens at the **System > Dashboard > Status** page.

The **Dashboard** page displays widgets that provide performance and status information, allowing you to configure some basic system settings. These widgets appear on a single dashboard.



The following widgets are available:

### System Information

Displays basic information about the FortiAuthenticator system including host name, device FQDN name, serial number, system time, firmware version, architecture, system configuration, current administrator, and up time.

From this widget you can manually update the FortiAuthenticator firmware to a different release. For more information, see [System information widget on page 29](#).

<b>System Resources</b>	Displays the usage status of the CPU and memory. For more information, see <a href="#">System resources widget on page 33</a> .
<b>Authentication Activity</b>	Displays a customizable graph of the number of logins to the device. For more information, see <a href="#">Authentication activity widget on page 33</a> .
<b>User Inventory</b>	Displays the numbers of users, groups, FortiTokens, FSSO users, and FortiClient users currently used or logged in, as well as the maximum allowed number, the number still available, and the number that are disabled. For more information, see <a href="#">User lookup on page 34</a> .
<b>HA Status</b>	Displays whether or not HA is enabled.
<b>License Information</b>	Displays the device's license information, as well as SMS information. For more information, see <a href="#">License information widget on page 33</a> .
<b>Disk Monitor</b>	Displays if RAID is enabled, and the current disk usage in GB. For more information, see <a href="#">Disk monitor widget on page 33</a> .
<b>Top User Lockouts</b>	Displays the top user lockouts. For more information, see <a href="#">Top user lockouts widget on page 34</a> .

## Customizing the dashboard

The FortiAuthenticator system settings dashboard is customizable. You can select which widgets to display, where they are located on the page, and whether they are minimized or maximized.

### To move a widget

Position your mouse cursor on the widget's title bar, then click and drag the widget to its new location.

### To add a widget

In the dashboard toolbar, select **Add Widget**, then select the widget you want to show. Multiple widgets of the same type can be added. To hide a widget, in its title bar, select the **Hide** icon.

### To see the available options for a widget

Position your mouse cursor over the icons in the widget's title bar. Options include show/hide the widget, edit the widget, refresh the widget content, and close the widget.

The following table lists the widget options.

<b>Show/Hide arrow</b>	Display or minimize the widget.
<b>Widget Title</b>	The name of the widget.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to change settings for the widget. This option appears only in certain widgets.

<b>Refresh</b>	Select to update the displayed information.
<b>Remove</b>	Select to remove the widget from the dashboard. You will be prompted to confirm the action. To add the widget, select <b>Widget</b> in the toolbar and then select the name of the widget you want to show.

### To change the widget title

Widget titles can be customized by selecting the edit button in the title bar and entering a new title in the widget settings dialog box. Some widgets have more options in their respective settings dialog box.

To reset a widget title to its default name, simply leave the **Custom widget title** field blank.

The widget refresh interval can also be manually adjusted from this dialog box.

## System information widget

The system dashboard includes a **System Information** widget, which displays the current status of FortiAuthenticator and enables you to configure basic system settings.

The following information is available on this widget:

<b>Host Name</b>	The identifying name assigned to this FortiAuthenticator unit. For more information, see <a href="#">Changing the host name on page 30</a> .
<b>Device FQDN</b>	The FQDN domain name. For more information, see <a href="#">Changing the FQDN domain name on page 30</a> .
<b>Serial Number</b>	The serial number of FortiAuthenticator. The serial number is unique to FortiAuthenticator and does not change with firmware upgrades. The serial number is used for identification when connecting to the FortiGuard server.
<b>System Time</b>	The current date, time, and time zone on the FortiAuthenticator internal clock or NTP servers. For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring the system date, time, and time zone on page 30</a> .
<b>Firmware Version</b>	The version and build number of the firmware installed on FortiAuthenticator. To update the firmware, you must download the latest version from the Customer Service & Support portal at <a href="https://support.fortinet.com">https://support.fortinet.com</a> . Select <b>Upgrade</b> and select the firmware image to load from your management computer.
<b>System Configuration</b>	The date of the last system configuration backup. Select <b>Backup/Restore</b> to backup or restore the system configuration. For more information, see <a href="#">Backing up and restoring the configuration on page 32</a> .
<b>Current Administrator</b>	The name of the currently logged on administrator.
<b>Uptime</b>	The duration of time FortiAuthenticator has been running since it was last started or restarted.

**Shutdown / Reboot**

Options to shutdown or reboot the device. When rebooting or shutting down the system, you have the option to enter a message that will be added to the event log explaining the reason for the shutdown or reboot.

## Changing the host name

The **System Information** widget will display the full host name.

To change the host name:

1. Go to **System > Dashboard > Status**.
2. In the **System Information** widget, in the **Host Name** field, select **Change**. The **Edit Host Name** page opens.
3. In the **Host name** field, type a new host name.



The host name may be up to 35 characters in length. It may include US-ASCII letters, numbers, hyphens, and underscores. Spaces and special characters are not allowed.

4. Select **OK** to save the setting.

## Changing the FQDN domain name

To change the FQDN domain name:

1. Go to **System > Dashboard > Status**.
2. In the **System Information** widget, in the **Device FQDN** field, select **Change**. The **Edit Device FQDN** page opens.
3. Type a domain name in the field.

The FQDN domain name identifies the exact location of this server in the DNS hierarchy.

4. Select **OK** to save the setting.

## Configuring the system date, time, and time zone

You can either manually set the FortiAuthenticator system date and time, or configure the FortiAuthenticator unit to automatically keep its system time correct by synchronizing with an NTP server.



For many features to work the FortiAuthenticator system time must be accurate. Synchronization with a NTP server is highly recommended.

To configure the date and time:

1. Go to **System > Dashboard > Status**.
2. In the **System Information** widget, in the **System Time** field, select **Change**. The **Edit Time Setting** dialog box appears.

**Edit Time Setting**

**Change Time Zone**

Current time: Wed May 2 10:03:47 2018  
 Time zone: (GMT-8:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada) ▼

**Change Date and Time**

Set date/time: Date: 2018-05-02 Today |   
 Time: 10:03:47 Now |

☒ NTP enabled

NTP server 1: ntp1.fortinet.net ☐ Prefer

☒ Enable authentication

Key number: 1

Key type: ☒ MD5 ☐ SHA1

Key value:

NTP server 2:

☐ Enable authentication



Note that, since the release of FortiAuthenticator 4.2, you can now configure an additional NTP server.

- Configure the following settings to either manually configure the system time, or to automatically synchronize the FortiAuthenticator unit's clock with a NTP server:

#### Change Time Zone

**Time zone** Select a timezone from the dropdown menu.

#### Change Date and Time

**Set date/time** Either select **Today** or the calendar icon to specify the date, and either **Now** or the clock icon to specify the time.

**NTP enabled** Enable this option to set an NTP server. Note that, if you configure both NTP servers, you can select the **Prefer** checkbox to make **NTP server 1** the preferred server. The **NTP server 1** is set to **ntp1.fortinet.net** by default.

In addition, you can select **Enable authentication** for each NTP server configured and enter a key number, type, and the key value.

- Select **OK** to apply your changes.

## Backing up and restoring the configuration

Fortinet recommends that you back up your FortiAuthenticator configuration to your management computer on a regular basis to ensure that, should the system fail, you can quickly get the system back to its original state with minimal effect to the network. You should also perform a back up after making any changes to the FortiAuthenticator configuration.

The backup file is encrypted to prevent tampering. This configuration file includes both the CLI and GUI configurations of FortiAuthenticator, including users, user groups, FortiToken device list, authentication client list, LDAP directory tree, FSSO settings, remote LDAP, and certificates.

You can perform backups manually. Fortinet recommends backing up all configuration settings from your FortiAuthenticator unit before upgrading the FortiAuthenticator firmware.

Your FortiAuthenticator configuration can also be restored from a backup file on your management computer.

### To backup or restore the FortiAuthenticator configuration:

1. Go to **System > Dashboard > Status**.
2. In the **System Information** widget, in the **System Configuration** field, select **Backup/Restore**. The **Configuration Backup and Restore** page opens.
3. Select from the following settings:

<b>Backup</b>	Select <b>Download backup file</b> to save a backup file onto the management computer.
<b>Restore</b>	Select <b>Choose File</b> to find the backup file on your management computer, then select <b>Restore</b> to restore the selected backup configuration to the device.  You will be prompted to confirm the restore action, and FortiAuthenticator will reboot.

4. Select **Cancel** to return to the dashboard page.



When you restore the configuration from a backup file, any information changed since the backup will be lost. Any active sessions will be ended and must be restarted. You will have to log back in when the system reboots.



Restoring a configuration is only possible from a backup file made on the same model running the same version of the operating system.



If you are restoring a configuration on the master device in an HA cluster, shutdown the slave device until the master device is back online to ensure that the configuration synchronization occurs correctly.



## System resources widget

The **System Resources** widget on the dashboard displays the usage status of the CPU and memory as a percentage.

## Authentication activity widget

The **Authentication Activity** widget displays a line graph of the number of logins versus time.

To adjust the data displayed in the graph, select the edit button to open the **Authentication Activity Widget Settings** dialog box.

The following settings are available:

<b>Custom widget title</b>	Enter a custom widget title for the widget, or leave it blank to keep the default title.
<b>Refresh interval</b>	Enter a custom refresh interval for the widget (in seconds), or leave it as the default time of 300 seconds (or five minutes).
<b>Time period</b>	Select a time period for the graph to cover from the dropdown menu: <b>Last 6 hours</b> , <b>Last 24 hours</b> , <b>Last 3 days</b> , <b>Last 7 days</b> , or <b>Last 30 days</b> .
<b>Activity Type</b>	Select the activity type to display in the graph: <b>All login attempts</b> , <b>Successful login attempts</b> , or <b>Failed login attempts</b> .

## User inventory widget

The **User Inventory** widget displays the numbers of users, groups, FortiTokens, FSSO users, and FortiClient users currently used or logged in, as well as the maximum allowed number, the number still available, and the number that are disabled.

## License information widget

The **License Information** widget displays the device's license information, as well as SMS information. You can also add a license and more SMS messages.

To upload a new license file, select **Upload** in the **License Type** field, then browse to the license file on the management computer.

To add more SMS messages, select **Add Messages** from either the **Sent/Allowed** field or the **Status** field. In the **Add Messages** dialog box, enter the certificate number for the messages and then select **OK** to add the messages. You can also **Refresh Messages**.

## Disk monitor widget

The **Disk Monitor** widget displays the RAID status, and the current disk usage in GB. If RAID is enabled, the RAID status is visible and the RAID graphic displays the position and status of each disk in the RAID array.

## Top user lockouts widget

The **Top User Lockouts** widget displays the users who are locked out the most. For more information on user lockouts and for instruction on adjusting user lockout settings, see [Lockouts on page 1](#).

To change the number of user lockouts displayed in the widget, select the edit icon and change the number in the **Number of lockouts** field (set to 5 by default).

## User lookup

You can search for users to easily manage and monitor the ongoing activity of a specific user. Selecting a user from the search results presents a consolidated view of the user's information and recent activities, as well as shortcuts to manage that user.

To search for users, go to **System > Dashboard > User Lookup**. From the search results, click the username to see user details.

The following information and options are available:

User Info	
<b>Username</b>	The user accounts' username.
<b>Full name</b>	The user accounts' first name and last name.
<b>Email</b>	The user account's email address.
<b>User Type</b>	The user account type, either <b>Local</b> , <b>LDAP/&lt;server name&gt;</b> , or <b>RADIUS/&lt;server name&gt;</b> .
<b>Account status</b>	<p>The status of the user account, either <b>Enabled</b>, <b>Disabled</b>, or <b>Locked until &lt;date/time&gt;</b>. The following account management shortcuts are available depending on the account status:</p> <p><b>Disable:</b> Select to disable the account of a user that is enabled.</p> <p><b>Re-enable:</b> Select to enable the account of a user that is disabled.</p> <p><b>Unlock:</b> Select to unlock the account of a user that has been locked.</p>
<b>Token</b>	The token that is assigned to the user account. Select <b>Edit</b> to manage the token assigned to the account. See <a href="#">Configuring token-based authentication on page 74</a> .
<b>RADIUS-based Usage</b>	The user accounts' cumulative RADIUS-based usage statistics. See <a href="#">RADIUS sessions on page 169</a> for more information.
<b>Active RADIUS Sessions</b>	The user accounts' active RADIUS accounting sessions. See <a href="#">RADIUS sessions on page 169</a> for more information.
<b>Recent Activity</b>	The 20 most recent system logs containing the selected username in the log's User and/or Short message fields. For more information about system logs, see <a href="#">Log access on page 196</a> .

<b>Refresh</b>	Select to refresh the Recent Activity list.
<b>View All</b>	Select to view all logs containing the selected username. See <a href="#">Log access on page 196</a> for more information.

## Network

The **Network** tree menu allows you to configure device interfaces, DNS configuration, static routing, and packet capturing.

### Interfaces

To view the interface list, go to **System > Network > Interfaces**.

The following information is shown:

<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected interface.
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term in the search text box then select <b>Search</b> to search the interface list.
<b>Interface</b>	The names of the physical interfaces on your FortiAuthenticator unit. The name, including number, of a physical interface depends on the model.
<b>IPv4</b>	The IPv4 address of the interface.
<b>IPv6</b>	The IPv6 address of the interface, if applicable.
<b>Link status</b>	The link status of the interface.

#### To edit an interface:

1. In the interfaces list, select the interface you need to edit and select the **Edit** button, or select the interface name. The **Edit Network Interface** window opens.

2. Edit the following settings as required.

<b>Interface Status</b>	The interface name and its current link status is displayed.
<b>IP Address / Netmask</b>	
<b>IPv4</b>	Enter the IPv4 address and netmask associated with this interface.
<b>IPv6</b>	Enter the IPv6 address associated with this interface.
<b>Access Rights</b>	
<b>Admin access</b>	<p>Select the allowed administrative service protocols from: <b>Telnet</b>, <b>SSH</b>, <b>HTTPS</b>, <b>HTTP</b>, and <b>SNMP</b>.</p> <p>Note that when HTTPS is enabled, you can also specify <b>Admin access</b> and/or <b>REST API</b> access.</p>
<b>Services</b>	<p>Select the allowed services from: <b>RADIUS Accounting Monitor</b>, <b>RADIUS Auth</b>, <b>RADIUS Accounting SSO</b>, <b>LDAP</b>, <b>LDAPS</b>, <b>FortiGate FSSO</b>, <b>OCSP</b>, <b>FortiClient FSSO</b>, <b>Hierarchical FSSO</b>, <b>DC/TS Agent FSSO</b>, and <b>Syslog</b>.</p> <p>Note that <b>Syslog</b> is only available if Syslog SSO has been enabled. See <a href="#">General settings on page 1</a> for more information.</p>

3. Select **OK** to apply the edits to the network interface.

## DNS

To configure DNS settings, go to **System > Network > DNS**.

DNS Configuration	
Primary DNS server:	<input type="text" value="208.91.112.53"/>
Secondary DNS server:	<input type="text" value="208.91.112.53"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable DNS cache	
DNS cache maximum TTL:	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<input type="button" value="OK"/>	

The following settings can be configured:

<b>Primary DNS server</b>	The IP address of the primary DNS server.
<b>Secondary DNS server</b>	The IP address of the secondary DNS server.
<b>Enable DNS cache</b>	Enable to cache the responses to DNS queries.
<b>DNS cache maximum TTL</b>	When DNS cache is enabled, configure the length of time in seconds responses to DNS queries are cached. If the configured value is larger than the time to live (TTL) value specified in the DNS record, the DNS TTL value is used. The default is set to 0, which uses the TTL value specified in the DNS record.

To apply changes, select **OK**.

## Static routing

To view the list of static routes, go to **System > Network > Static Routing**. Routes can be created, edited, and deleted as required. Use the checkboxes to select the static route entries you wish to either **Delete** or **Edit**.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new static route.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected static route.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected static route.
<b>IP/Mask</b>	The destination IP address and netmask for this route.
<b>Gateway</b>	The IP address of the next hop router to which this route directs traffic.
<b>Device</b>	The device or interface associated with this route.

### To create a new static route:

1. In the static route list, select **Create New**. The **Create New Static Route** window opens.
2. Edit the following settings as required.

<b>Destination IP/Mask</b>	Enter the destination IP address and netmask for this route.
<b>Network interface</b>	Select the network interface that connects to the gateway.
<b>Gateway</b>	Enter the IP address of the next hop router to which this route directs traffic.
<b>Comment</b>	Optionally, enter a comment about the route.

3. Select **OK** to create the new static route.

## Packet capture

Packets can be captured on configured interfaces by going to **System > Network > Packet Capture**.

The following information is available:

<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the packet sniffer on the selected interface.
<b>interface</b>	The name of the configured interface for which packets can be captured. For information on configuring an interface, see <a href="#">Interfaces on page 35</a> .
<b>Maximum packets to capture</b>	The maximum number of packets that can be captured on a sniffer.
<b>Status</b>	The status of the packet capture process. Allows you to start and stop the capturing process, and download the most recently captured packets.

To start capturing packets on an interface, select the **Start capturing** button in the **Status** column for that interface. The **Status** will change to **Capturing**, and the **Stop capturing** and download buttons will become available.

### To download captured packets:

1. Select the download button for the interface whose captured packets you are downloading.  
If no packets have been captured for that interface, select the **Start capturing** button.
2. When prompted, save the packet file (**sniffer\_[interface].pcap**) to your management computer.  
The file can then be opened using packet analyzer software.

### To edit a packet sniffer:

1. Select the interface whose packet capture settings you need to configure by either selecting the configured interface name from the interface list, or selecting the checkbox in the interface row and selecting **Edit** from the toolbar.  
The **Edit Packet Sniffer** page opens.
2. Configure the following options:

<b>interface</b>	The interface name (non-changeable).
------------------	--------------------------------------

<b>Max packets to capture</b>	Enter the maximum number of packets to capture, between 1-10000. The default is 500 packets.
<b>Include IPv6 packets</b>	Select to include IPv6 packets when capturing packets.
<b>Include non-IP packets</b>	Select to include non-IP packets when capturing packets.

3. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

## Administration

Configure administrative settings for the FortiAuthenticator device.

### System access

To adjust system access settings, go to **System > Administration > System Access**. The **Edit System Access Settings** page will open.

The following settings are available:

#### Administrative Access

<b>Require strong cryptography</b>	Enable this option to restrict administrative access using stronger cryptographic algorithms, such as TLS 1.2, DHE, AES, and SHA256.
<b>Enable pre-authentication warning message</b>	Pre-authentication warning messages can be found under <b>Authentication &gt; Self-service Portal &gt; Replacement Messages</b> .

**CLI Access**

<b>CLI idle timeout</b>	Enter the amount of time before the CLI times out due to inactivity, from 0 to 480 minutes (maximum of eight hours).
-------------------------	--

**GUI Access**

<b>GUI idle timeout</b>	Enter the amount of time before the GUI times out due to inactivity, from 1 to 480 minutes (maximum of eight hours).
-------------------------	--

<b>Maximum HTTP header length</b>	Enter the maximum HTTP header length, from 4 to 16 KB.
-----------------------------------	--

<b>HTTPS Certificate</b>	Select an HTTPS certificate from the dropdown menu.
--------------------------	---

<b>HTTP Strict Transport Security (HSTS) Expiry</b>	Enable or disable HSTS enforcement, to avoid SSL sniffing attacks, and set an expiry from 0 to 730 days (where 0 means no expiry, maximum of two years). The default is set to 180.
---	---

<b>Certificate authority type</b>	Select the selected certificate's authority type, either <b>Local CA</b> or <b>Trusted CA</b> .
-----------------------------------	---

<b>CA certificate that issued the server certificate</b>	Select the issuing server certificate from the dropdown menu.
--	---

<b>Additional allowed hosts/domain names</b>	Specify any additional hosts that this site can serve, separated by commas or line breaks.
--	--

<b>Public IP/FQDN for FortiToken Mobile</b>	<p>Enter the IP, or FQDN, of the FortiAuthenticator for external access.</p> <p>The mobile device running the FortiToken Mobile app has to be able to access the FortiAuthenticator interface for push to operate.</p> <p>Enter the IPs/FQDNs in the following format:</p> <p><code>ip_addr[:port]</code> or <code>FQDN[:port]</code></p>
---	---

Select **OK** to apply any changes. See [Certificate Management on page 1](#) for more information about certificates.

## High availability

Multiple FortiAuthenticator units can operate as an high availability (HA) cluster to provide even higher reliability.

There are three HA roles:

1. Cluster member
2. Standalone master
3. Load-balancing slave

The FortiAuthenticator can operate in two separate HA modes:



1. **Cluster:** Active-passive clustered fail-over mode where all of the configuration is synchronized between the devices.
2. **Load-balancing:** Active-active HA method in which one device acts as a standalone master with up to two additional, geographically separated load-balancing slaves. The load can be distributed across the devices using round-robin DNS, Auth/NAS client load distribution, or external load balancing devices. Load-balancing mode is intended for two-FortiAuthenticator authentication deployments, as only a subset of the configuration is synchronized between the devices.

Both HA modes can be combined with an HA cluster acting as a standalone master for geographically distributed load-balancing slaves.



If an HA cluster is configured on an interface (such as port 2) and then disabled, it will not be possible to re-enable HA.

This is because, when disabled, the interface's IP address is reconfigured to the interface to allow the administrator to access the newly standalone device. To allow the port to be available for use again in a HA cluster, the IP address must be manually removed.

### Cluster member role

In the cluster member role, one unit is active and the other is on standby. If the active unit fails, the standby unit becomes active. The cluster is configured as a single authentication server on your FortiGate units.

Authentication requests made during a failover from one unit to another are lost, but subsequent requests complete normally. The failover process takes about 30 seconds.



Cluster mode uses Ethernet broadcasts through UDP/720 as part of its master/slave election mechanism and for ongoing communication. Layer 2 connectivity is required between the two devices in an HA cluster, preferably via a crossover cable, as some network devices might block such Ethernet broadcasts.

### To configure FortiAuthenticator HA:

1. On each unit, go to **System > Administration > High Availability**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Enable HA</b>	Enable HA.
<b>Role</b>	Select <b>Cluster member</b> .
	For more information about the other options, see <a href="#">Standalone master and load-balancing slave roles</a> below.

<b>Maintenance Mode</b>	<p>Enable to put the FortiAuthenticator unit of an HA master cluster into maintenance mode to remove it from the cluster. Upon entering maintenance mode, if the FortiAuthenticator unit is the active master, it relinquishes the active master role and assumes a passive role. While in maintenance mode, the FortiAuthenticator will continue to monitor the status of its HA pair and announce its presence.</p> <p>When set to <b>Enabled with synchronization</b>, the FortiAuthenticator continues to keep its configuration synchronized with the active master.</p> <p>When set to <b>Enabled without synchronization</b>, the FortiAuthenticator stops synchronizing its configuration with the active master.</p>
<b>Interface</b>	Select a network interface to use for communication between the two cluster members. This interface must not already have a IP address assigned and it cannot be used for authentication services. Both units must use the same interface for HA communication.
<b>Cluster member IP address</b>	Enter the IP address this unit uses for HA-related communication with the other FortiAuthenticator unit. The two units must have different addresses. Usually, you should assign addresses on the same private subnet.
<b>Admin access</b>	Select the types of administrative access to allow from: <b>Telnet, SSH, HTTPS, Admin access, REST API, HTTP, and SNMP.</b>
<b>Priority</b>	Set to <b>Low</b> on one unit and <b>High</b> on the other. Normally, the unit with <b>High</b> priority is the master unit.
<b>Password</b>	Enter a string to be used as a shared key for IPsec encryption. This must be the same on both units.
<b>Load-balancing slaves</b>	Add the other load-balancing cluster members by entering their IP addresses.
<b>Monitored interfaces</b>	Enable the interfaces you wish to monitor.
<b>Monitored interfaces stability period</b>	Define the stability period for the monitored interfaces in seconds, between 0-3600 (or one hour). The default is set to 30.

3. Select **OK** to apply the settings.



When one unit has become the master, reconnect to the GUI and complete your configuration. The configuration will automatically be copied to the slave unit.

## Standalone master and load-balancing slave roles

The load-balancing HA method enables active-active HA across geographically separated locations and Layer 3 networks. Only the following authentication related features can be synchronized:

- Token and seeds
- Local user database
- Remote user database

- Group mappings
- Token and user mappings

Other features, such as FSSO and certificates, cannot be synchronized between devices.

The standalone master is the primary system where users, groups, and tokens are configured. The load-balancing slave is synchronized to the master.

To improve the resilience of the master system, an active-passive master cluster with up to two load-balancing slave devices can be configured.



Remote administrator users are not synchronized between the master and the load-balancing slave.

As a workaround, you can import remote users to slave roles, and change their roles to Administrator.

### To configure load-balancing HA:

1. On each unit, go to **System > Administration > High Availability**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Enable HA</b>	Enable HA.
<b>Role</b>	Select <b>Standalone master</b> on the master device, and <b>Load-balancing slave</b> on the slave device/s.
<b>Load Balancing master IP address</b>	On the load-balancing slave device/s, enter IP address of the master.
<b>Password</b>	Enter a string to be used as a shared key for IPsec encryption. This must be the same on both units.
<b>Load-balancing slaves</b>	On the master, enter IP address or IP addresses of the load-balancing slave devices. Up to two can be added.

3. Select **OK** to apply the settings.

### Administrative access to the HA cluster

Administrative access is available through any of the network interfaces using their assigned IP addresses or through the HA interface using the **Cluster member IP address**, assigned on the **System > Administration > High Availability** page. In all cases, administrative access is available only if it is enabled on the interface.

Administrative access through any of the network interface IP addresses connects only to the master unit. The only administrative access to the slave unit is through the HA interface using the slave unit's **Cluster member IP address**.

Configuration changes made on the master unit are automatically pushed to the slave unit. The slave unit does not permit configuration changes, but you might want to access the unit to change HA settings, or for firmware upgrades, shutdown, reboot, or troubleshooting.



FortiAuthenticator VMs used in a HA cluster each require a license. Each license is tied to a specific IP address. In an HA cluster, all interface IP addresses are the same on the two units, except for the HA interface.

Request each license based on either the unique IP address of the unit's HA interface or the IP address of a non-HA interface which will be the same on both units.



If you disable and then re-enable HA operation, the interface that was assigned to HA communication will not be available for HA use. You must first go to **System > Network > Interfaces** and delete the IP address from that interface.

## Restoring the configuration

When restoring a configuration to an HA cluster master device, the master will reboot and in the interim the slave device will be promoted to master. When the previous master returns to service, it will become a slave and the existing master will overwrite its configuration, defeating the configuration restore. To avoid this, use the following process when restoring a configuration:

1. Shutdown the slave unit.
2. Restore the configuration on the master unit.
3. Wait until the master unit is back online.
4. Turn on slave unit — it will synchronize to the restored configuration after booting up.

## Firmware upgrade



For a stable HA configuration, all units in an HA cluster must be running the same firmware version, and have the same sized license for HA devices.

When upgrading the firmware on FortiAuthenticator devices in an HA cluster, you can perform a coordinated upgrade of both cluster members. During the coordinated upgrade, the cluster upgrades the standby (or slave) device and then the active device to run the new firmware image. The firmware upgrade takes place without interrupting communication through the cluster. This firmware upgrade method can only be initiated from the active member of the cluster.

The following sequence describes the steps the cluster goes through during a coordinated firmware upgrade.

1. The administrator initiates the firmware upgrade from the active device.
2. The firmware image transfers to the slave device.
3. The firmware upgrades on the slave device.
4. The slave device reboots and synchronizes with the active device.
5. The firmware upgrade begins on the active device. The slave device becomes the new active device.
6. The former active device reboots and synchronizes with the new active device.
7. The former active device becomes the active device, and the former slave device becomes the slave device.

If you want to perform the firmware upgrade on each FortiAuthenticator cluster member individually, specific steps must be taken to ensure that the upgrade is successful:

1. Start the firmware upgrade on the active, or master, device. See [Upgrading the firmware on page 1](#).  
The device will reboot. While the master device is rebooting, the slave device becomes the master.

2. Start the firmware upgrade on the new master device.

The device will reboot. Once both devices have rebooted, the original master device will again be the master, while the slave device will return to being the slave.

If a situation arises where both devices are claiming to be the HA master due to a firmware mismatch, and the HA port of the device that is intended to be the slave cannot be accessed (such as when a crossover cable is being used), use the following steps:

1. Shutdown the master device to which you have access, or, if physical access to the unit is not available to turn it back on, reboot the device. See [System Information widget](#).

Note that, if rebooting the device, **Step 2** below must be completed before the device finishes rebooting, which can be as short as 30 seconds.

2. With the previously inaccessible device now accessible, upgrade its firmware to the required version so that both devices have the same version.

The device will reboot.

3. If you shutdown the device in **Step 1**, power it back on.

Once both devices are back online, they will assume the HA roles dictated by their respective HA priorities.

## Firmware upgrade

The FortiAuthenticator firmware can be upgraded by either going to **System > Administration > Firmware**, or through the **System Information** widget on the dashboard (see [System Information widget on page 1](#)).

For instructions on upgrading the device's firmware, see [Upgrading the firmware on page 1](#).

## Upgrade history

The upgrade history of the device is shown under the **Upgrade History** heading in the **Firmware Upgrade or Downgrade** pane. It displays the version that was upgraded to, the time and date that the upgrade took place, and the user that performed the upgrade. This information can be useful when receiving support to identify incorrect upgrade paths that can cause stability issues.

Always review all sections in the [FortiAuthenticator Release Notes](#) prior to upgrading your device.

## Configuring auto-backup

You can configure the FortiAuthenticator to automatically perform configuration back ups to an FTP or SFTP server.

Even though the backup file is encrypted to prevent tampering, access to the FTP server should be restricted. This configuration file backup includes both the CLI and GUI configurations of FortiAuthenticator. The backed-up information includes users, user groups, FortiToken device list, authentication client list, LDAP directory tree, FSSO settings, remote LDAP and RADIUS, and certificates.

To configure automatic backups, go to **System > Administration > Config Auto-backup**.

Enter the following information, and then select **OK** to apply the settings:

<b>Enable configuration auto-backup</b>	Enable the configuration of automatic configuration backups.
<b>Frequency</b>	Select the automatic backup frequency: <b>Hourly</b> , <b>Daily</b> , <b>Weekly</b> , or <b>Monthly</b> .
<b>Backup time</b>	<p>Entire a time, select <b>Now</b>, or select the clock icon to set the scheduled time for backups to occur.</p> <p>Note that this options is not available when the frequency is set to hourly.</p>
<b>FTP directory</b>	Enter the FTP directory where the backup configuration files will be saved.
<b>FTP server</b>	<p>Select the FTP server to which the backup configuration files will be saved.</p> <p>See <a href="#">FTP servers on page 51</a> for information on adding FTP servers.</p>
<b>Secondary FTP server</b>	Select a secondary FTP server.

## SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) enables you to monitor hardware on your network. You can configure the hardware, such as the FortiAuthenticator SNMP agent, to report system information and send traps (alarms or event messages) to SNMP managers. An SNMP manager, or host, is typically a computer running an application that can read the incoming trap and event messages from the agent, and send out SNMP queries to the SNMP agents.

By using an SNMP manager, you can access SNMP traps and data from any FortiAuthenticator interface configured for SNMP management access. Part of configuring an SNMP manager is listing it as a host in a community on FortiAuthenticator it will be monitoring. Otherwise, the SNMP monitor will not receive any traps from that unit, or be able to query that unit.

The FortiAuthenticator SNMP implementation is read-only. SNMP v1, v2c, and v3 compliant SNMP managers have read-only access to system information through queries and can receive trap messages from FortiAuthenticator.

To monitor FortiAuthenticator system information and receive FortiAuthenticator traps, your SNMP manager needs the Fortinet and FortiAuthenticator Management Information Base (MIB) files. A MIB is a text file that lists the SNMP data objects that apply to the device to be monitored. These MIBs provide information that the SNMP manager needs to interpret the SNMP trap, event, and query messages sent by FortiAuthenticator SNMP agent.

The Fortinet implementation of SNMP includes support for most of RFC 2665 (Ethernet-like MIB) and most of RFC 1213 (MIB II). RFC support for SNMP v3 includes Architecture for SNMP Frameworks (RFC 3411), and partial support of User-based Security Model (RFC 3414).

SNMP traps alert you to important events that occur, such as overuse of memory or a high rate of authentication failures.

SNMP fields contain information about FortiAuthenticator, such as CPU usage percentage or the number of sessions. This information is useful for monitoring the condition of the unit on an ongoing basis and to provide more information when a trap occurs.

## Configuring SNMP

Before a remote SNMP manager can connect to the Fortinet agent, you must configure one or more interfaces to accept SNMP connections by going to **System > Network > Interfaces**. Edit the interface, and under **Admin access**, enable **SNMP**. See [Interfaces on page 1](#).

You can also set the thresholds that trigger various SNMP traps. Note that a setting of zero disables the trap.

### To configure SNMP settings:

1. Go to **System > Administration > SNMP**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>SNMP Contact</b>	Enter the contact information for the person responsible for this FortiAuthenticator unit.
<b>SNMP Description</b>	Enter descriptive information about FortiAuthenticator.
<b>SNMP Location</b>	Enter the physical location of FortiAuthenticator.
<b>User Table Nearly Full Trap Threshold</b>	The user table is nearly full. The threshold is a percentage of the maximum permitted number of users.
<b>User Group Table Nearly Full Trap Threshold</b>	The user group table is nearly full. The threshold is a percentage of the maximum permitted number of user groups.
<b>RADIUS Authentication Client Table Nearly Full Trap Threshold</b>	The RADIUS authenticated client table is nearly full. The threshold is a percentage of the maximum permitted number of RADIUS clients.
<b>Authentication Event Rate Over Limit Trap Threshold</b>	High authentication load. The threshold is the number of authentication events over a five minute period.
<b>Authentication Failure Rate Over Limit Trap Threshold</b>	High rate of authentication failure. The threshold is the number of authentication failures over a five minute period.
<b>CPU Utilization Trap Threshold (%)</b>	High load on CPU. The default is set to 90%.
<b>Disk Utilization Trap Threshold (%)</b>	Disk usage is high. The default is set to 80%.
<b>Memory Utilization Trap Threshold (%)</b>	Too much memory used. The default is set to 90%.

3. Select **OK** to apply the changes.

### To create a new SNMP community:

1. Go to **System > Administration > SNMP**.
2. Select **Create New** under **SNMP v1/v2c**. The **Create New SNMP V1/v2c** window opens.

**Create New SNMP V1/v2c**

**SNMP v1/v2c**

**Community name:**

**Events:**

☐ CPU usage is high

☐ Memory is low

☐ Interface IP is changed

☐ Auth users threshold exceeded

☐ Auth group threshold exceeded

☐ Radius NAS threshold exceeded

☐ Auth event rate threshold exceeded

☐ Auth failure rate threshold exceeded

☐ User lockout detected

☐ HA status changed

☐ Power Supply Unit failure

☐ Disk usage is high

**SNMP Hosts**

IP/Netmask	Queries	Traps	Delete
+ Add another SNMP Host			

3. Enter the following information in the **SNMPv1/v2c** section:

<b>Community name</b>	The name of the SNMP community.
<b>Events</b>	Select the events for which traps are enabled. Options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CPU usage is high</li> <li>Memory is low</li> <li>Interface IP is changed</li> <li>Auth users threshold exceeded</li> <li>Auth group threshold exceeded</li> <li>Radius NAS threshold exceeded</li> <li>Auth event rate threshold exceeded</li> <li>Auth failure rate threshold exceeded</li> <li>User lockout detected</li> <li>HA status is changed</li> <li>Power Supply Unit failure</li> <li>Disk usage is high</li> </ul>

4. In **SNMP Hosts**, select **Add another SNMP Host** and enter the following information:

<b>IP/Netmask</b>	Enter the IP address and netmask of the host.
<b>Queries</b>	Select if this host uses queries.



<b>Traps</b>	Select if this host uses traps.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the host.

5. Select **OK** to create the new SNMP community.

#### To create a new SNMP user:

1. Go to **System > Administration > SNMP**.
2. Select **Create New** under **SNMP v3**. The **Create New SNMP V3** window opens.
3. Enter the following information in the **General** section:

<b>Username</b>	The name of the SNMP user.
<b>Security level</b>	Select the security level from the dropdown menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>: No authentication or encryption.</li> <li>• <b>Authentication only</b>: Select the <b>Authentication method</b> then enter the authentication key in the <b>Authentication key</b> field.</li> <li>• <b>Encryption and authentication</b>: Select the <b>Authentication method</b>, enter the authentication key in the <b>Authentication key</b> field, then select the <b>Encryption method</b> and enter the encryption key in the <b>Encryption key</b> field. This option is set by default.</li> </ul>
<b>Events</b>	Select the events for which traps are enabled. See <a href="#">Events on page 48</a> .

4. In **SNMP Notification Hosts**, select **Add another SNMP Notification Host** and enter the following information:

<b>IP/Netmask</b>	Enter the IP address and netmask of the notification host.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the notification host.

5. Select **OK** to create the new SNMP V3 user.

#### To download MIB files:

1. Go to **System > Administration > SNMP**.
2. Under **FortiAuthenticator SNMP MIB**, select the MIB file you need to download, options include the FortiAuthenticator MIB and Fortinet Core MIB files.

## Licensing

FortiAuthenticator-VM works in evaluation mode until it is licensed. In evaluation mode, only a limited number of users can be configured on the system. To expand this capability, a stackable licence can be applied to the system to increase both the user count, and all other metrics associated with the user count.

When a license is purchased, a registration code is provided. Go to [support.fortinet.com](https://support.fortinet.com) and register your device by entering the registration code. You will be asked for the IP address of your FortiAuthenticator unit, and will then be provided with a license key.

Ensure that the IP address specified while registering your unit is configured on one of the device's network interfaces, then upload the license key to your FortiAuthenticator-VM.

The **License Information** widget shows the current state of the device license. See [License Information widget on page 1](#).

#### To license FortiAuthenticator:

1. Register your device at the [Fortinet Support](#) website.
2. Ensure that one of your device's network interfaces is configured to the IP address specified during registration.
3. Go to **System > Administration > Licensing**.
4. Select **Choose File** and locate the license file you received from Fortinet.
5. Select **OK**.

## FortiGuard

To view and configure FortiGuard connections, go to **System > Administration > FortiGuard**. The FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN) page provides information and configuration settings for FortiGuard subscription services. For more information about FortiGuard services, see the [FortiGuard](#) web page.

Configure the following settings, then select **OK** to apply them:

FortiGuard Subscription Services	
<b>Messaging Service</b>	The data to which the messaging service license is valid.
<b>SMS messages</b>	The total number of allowed SMS messages, and the number of messages that have been used.
FortiGuard Proxy Server	
<b>Enable FortiGuard proxy server</b>	<p>If enabled, communication with FortiGuard servers will go through this proxy server.</p> <p>Enter the proxy server's address, port, and optionally specify a <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> for user authentication.</p>
FortiToken Hardware Provisioning	
<b>Server address</b> <b>Server port</b>	The server address (set to <b>update.fortiguards.net</b> by default) and server port (set to <b>443</b> by default).
FortiToken Mobile Provisioning	
<b>Server address</b> <b>Server port</b>	The server address (set to <b>directregistration.fortinet.com</b> by default) and server port (set to <b>443</b> by default).
<b>Activation timeout</b>	The activation timeout in hours, from 1 - 168 hours (or seven days).

<b>Token size</b>	The token size, either <b>6</b> (set by default) or <b>8</b> .
<b>Token algorithm</b>	Time-based One-time Password ( <b>TOTP</b> , set by default) or Hash-based One-time Password ( <b>HOTP</b> ) algorithm.
<b>Time step</b>	The time step, either <b>60</b> (set by default) or <b>30</b> .
<b>Require PIN</b>	Select whether or not to require a PIN, or to enforce a mandatory PIN.  When set to <b>Required</b> (set by default), the user has the option to set a PIN, but doesn't have to set one. However, a user must set a PIN when set to <b>Enforced</b> , which cannot be deleted.
<b>PIN Length</b>	The PIN length, either <b>8</b> , <b>6</b> , or <b>4</b> (set by default).
<b>FTM trial license activation</b>	Option to disable the FortiAuthenticator's free trial FortiToken Mobile licenses.
<b>FortiGuard Messaging Service</b>	
<b>Server address</b>	The server address (set to <b>msgctrl1.fortinet.com</b> by default) and server port (set to <b>443</b> by default).
<b>Server port</b>	



As of FortiAuthenticator 4.3, FTM Push credentials for Apple and Google can now be updated via FortiGuard without admin user intervention.

## FTP servers

To view a list of the configured FTP servers, go to **System > Administration > FTP Servers**.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new FTP server (this will be the only option available if no FTP servers are configured).
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected FTP server or servers.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected FTP server.
<b>Name</b>	The name of the FTP server.
<b>Server name/IP</b>	The server name or IP address, and port number.

**To create a new FTP server:**

1. Select **Create New**. The **Create New FTP Server** window will open.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the FTP server.
<b>Connection type</b>	Select the connection type, either <b>FTP</b> or <b>SFTP</b> .
<b>Server name/IP</b>	Enter the server name or IP address.
<b>Port</b>	Enter the port number.
<b>Anonymous</b>	Select to make the server anonymous.
<b>Username</b>	Enter the server username (if <b>Anonymous</b> is not selected).
<b>Password</b>	Enter the server password (if <b>Anonymous</b> is not selected).

3. Select **OK** to create the new FTP server.

## Admin profiles

Similar to FortiOS, FortiAuthenticator can incorporate the use of admin profiles. Each administrator can be granted either full permissions or a customized admin profile. Profiles are defined as aggregates of read-only or read/write permission sets. The most commonly used permission sets are pre-defined, but custom permission sets can also be created.

To create a new admin profile, go to **System > Administration > Admin Profiles > Create New**. You can give the admin profile a **Name**, a **Description**, and configure the **Permission sets** you want for that particular admin profile.

Go to **Authentication > User Management > Local Users**, and select the admin profile to an administrator. You can assign more than one admin profile to each administrator.

## Messaging

FortiAuthenticator sends email for several purposes, such as password reset requests, new user approvals, user self-registration, and two-factor authentication.

By default, FortiAuthenticator uses its built-in Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) server. This is provided for convenience, but is not necessarily optimal for production environments. Fortinet recommends that you configure the unit to use a reliable external mail relay.

There are two distinct email services:

1. **Administrators:** Password reset, new user approval, two-factor authentication, etc.
2. **Users:** Password reset, self-registration, two-factor authentication, etc.

If you will be sending SMS messages to users, you must configure the SMS gateways that you will use. Ask your SMS provider for information about using its gateway. The FortiAuthenticator SMS gateway configuration differs according to the protocol your SMS provider uses.

## SMTP servers

To view a list of the SMTP servers, go to **System > Messaging > SMTP Servers**.



Although the FortiAuthenticator can be configured to send emails from the built-in mail server (localhost), this is not recommended. Anti-spam methods such as IP lookup, DKIM, and SPF can cause mail from such ad-hoc mail servers to be blocked. It is highly recommended that email is relayed via an official mail server for your domain.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new SMTP server.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected SMTP server or servers.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected SMTP server.
<b>Set as Default</b>	Set the selected SMTP server as the default SMTP server.
<b>Name</b>	The name of the SMTP server.
<b>Server</b>	The server name and port number.
<b>Default</b>	Shows a green circle with a check mark for the default SMTP server. To change the default server, select the server you would like to use as the default, then select <b>Set as Default</b> in the toolbar.

To add an external SMTP server:

1. Go to **System > Messaging > SMTP Servers** and select **Create New**. The **Create New SMTP Server** window opens.

2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name to identify this mail server on FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Server name/IP</b>	Enter the IP address or Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the mail server.
<b>Port</b>	The default port 25. Change it if your SMTP server uses a different port.

<b>Sender name (optional)</b>	Optionally, enter the name that will appear when sending an email from FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Sender email address</b>	In the From field, enter the email address that will appear when sending an email from FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Connection Security and Authentication</b>	Customize the secure connection and authentication for a user.
<b>Secure connection</b>	For a secure connection to the mail server, select <b>STARTTLS</b> from the dropdown menu.
<b>Enable authentication</b>	Enable if the email server requires you to authenticate when sending email. Enter the <b>Account username</b> and <b>Password</b> if required.

- Optionally, select **Test Connection** to send a test email message. Specify a recipient and select **Send**. Confirm that the recipient received the message.



Note that the recipient's email system might treat the test email message as spam.

- Select **OK** to create the new SMTP server.

## Email services

To view a list of the email services, go to **System > Messaging > Email Services**.

The following information is shown:

<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected email service.
<b>Recipient</b>	The name of the email recipient.
<b>SMTP server</b>	The SMTP server associated with the recipient. The server can be selected from the dropdown menu.
<b>Save</b>	Select to save any changes made to the email services.

### To configure email services:

- Go to **System > Messaging > Email Services** and select the recipient you need to edit (the user's email service is shown below). The **Edit Email Service** window opens.

2. Configure the following:

<b>SMTP server</b>	Select the SMTP server from the dropdown menu.
<b>Public Address</b>	Customize the address or link for the email.
<b>Address discovery method</b>	<p>Select the address discovery method:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Automatic discovery:</b> Use device FQDN if configured, or automatically obtain address from the browser, or an active network interface.</li> <li>• <b>Specify an address:</b> Manually enter the address and port number.</li> <li>• <b>Use the IP address from a network interface:</b> Select a specific network interface from the dropdown menu.</li> </ul>
<b>Address</b>	Enter the recipient IP address or FQDN. Only available if <b>Address discovery method</b> is set to <b>Specify an address</b> .
<b>Port</b>	Enter the recipient port number (set to 80 by default). Only available if <b>Address discovery method</b> is set to <b>Specify an address</b> .
<b>Network interface</b>	Select a configured network interface from the dropdown menu. This option is only available when the <b>Address discovery method</b> is set to <b>Use the IP address from a network interface</b> .

3. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

## SMS gateways

To view a list of the configured SMS gateways, go to **System > Messaging > SMS Gateways**.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new SMS gateway.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected SMS gateway or gateways.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected SMS gateway.
<b>Set as Default</b>	Set the selected SMS gateway as the default SMS gateway.
<b>Name</b>	The name of the SMS gateway.

<b>Protocol</b>	The protocol used by the gateway.
<b>SMTP Server</b>	The SMTP server associated with the gateway.
<b>API URL</b>	The gateway's API URL, if it has one.
<b>Default</b>	Shows a green circle with a check mark for the default SMS gateway. To change the default gateway, select the gateway you would like to use as the default, then select <b>Set as Default</b> in the toolbar.

You can also configure the message that you will send to users. You can use the following tags for user-specific information:

Tag	Information
{{:country_code}}	Telephone country code, e.g. 01 for North America.
{{:mobile_number}}	User's mobile phone number.
{{:message}}	"Your authentication token code is " and the code.
{{:null}}	Empty string or null value.

### To create a new SMTP SMS gateway:

1. Go to **System > Messaging > SMS Gateways** and select **Create New**. The **Create New SMS Gateway** window opens.

**Create New SMS Gateway**

Name:

Protocol: ☒ SMTP ☐ HTTP ☐ HTTPS

**SMTP**

SMTP server:

Mail-to-SMS gateway:

Subject:

Body:

Email Preview:

To: 6045551234@domain.com

Subject: Your authentication token code is 123456

Body: Your authentication token code is 123456

**HTTP/HTTPS**

2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the new gateway.
-------------	-----------------------------------



<b>Protocol</b>	Select <b>SMTP</b> .
<b>SMTP server</b>	Select the SMTP server you use to contact the SMS gateway. The SMTP server must already be configured, see <a href="#">SMTP servers on page 52</a> .
<b>Mail-to-SMS gateway</b>	Change <code>domain.com</code> to the SMS provider's domain name. The default entry <code>{{:mobile_number}}@domain.com</code> assumes that the address is the user's mobile number followed by <code>@</code> and the domain name. In the <b>Email Preview</b> section, check the <b>To</b> field to ensure that the format of the address matches the information from your provider.
<b>Email Preview</b>	View a preview of the email message.
<b>To</b>	Format of the email address, as determined by the <b>Mail-to-SMS gateway</b> field.
<b>Subject</b>	Optionally, enter a subject for the message.
<b>Body</b>	Optionally, enter body text for the message.

3. Optionally, select **Test Settings** to send a test SMS message to the user.
4. Select **OK** to create a new SMTP SMS gateway.

**To create a new HTTP or HTTPS SMS gateway:**

1. Go to **System > Messaging > SMS Gateways** and select **Create New**. The **Create New SMS Gateway** window opens.
2. Expand the **HTTP/HTTPS** section, then enter the following information:

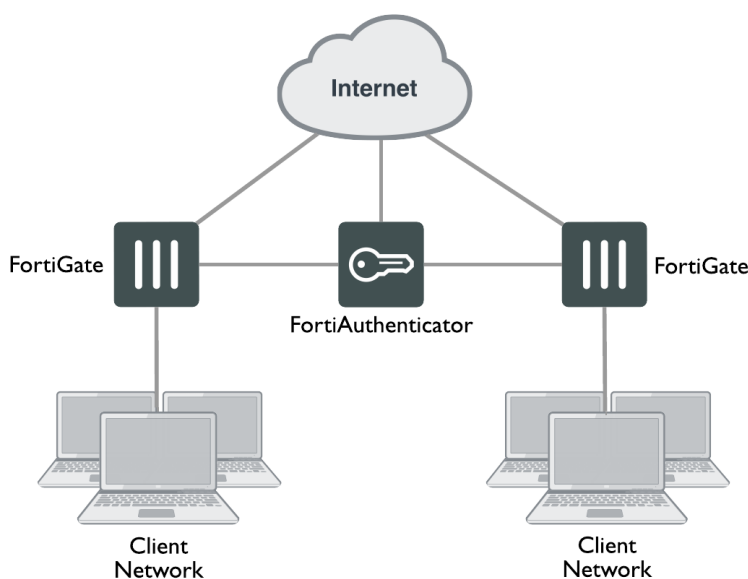
HTTP/HTTPS	
<b>HTTP method</b>	Select the method to use, either <b>GET</b> or <b>POST</b> .
<b>API URL</b>	Enter the gateway URL, omitting the protocol prefix <code>http://</code> or <code>https://</code> . Also omit the parameter string that begins with <code>?</code> .
<b>CA certificate</b>	Select CA certificate that validates this SMS provider from the dropdown menu.
<b>Content-Type</b>	Select a content type from the dropdown menu.
<b>Authorization Type</b>	Enter the <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> for <b>Basic Auth</b> .
HTTP Parameters	
<b>Field</b>	Enter the parameter names that the SMS provider's URL requires, such as <code>user</code> and <code>password</code> .
<b>Value</b>	Enter the values or tags corresponding to the fields.
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the field and its value.

3. If you need more parameter entries, select **Add another SMS Gateway HTTP Parameter**.
4. Optionally, select **Test Settings** to send a test SMS message to the user.
5. Select **OK** to create a new HTTP or HTTPS SMS gateway.

# Authentication

FortiAuthenticator provides an easy to configure authentication server for your users. Multiple FortiGate units can use a single FortiAuthenticator unit for remote authentication and FortiToken device management.

## FortiAuthenticator in a multiple FortiGate unit network



## What to configure

You need to decide which elements of the FortiAuthenticator configuration you need:

- Determine the type of authentication you will use: password-based or token-based. Optionally, you can enable both types. This is called two-factor authentication.
- Determine the type of authentication server you will use: RADIUS, built-in LDAP, or Remote LDAP. You will need to use at least one of these server types.
- Determine which FortiGate units or third-party devices will use the FortiAuthenticator. The FortiAuthenticator must be configured on each FortiGate unit as an authentication server, either RADIUS or LDAP. For RADIUS authentication, each FortiGate or third-party device must be configured on the FortiAuthenticator as an authentication client.

## Password-based authentication

User accounts can be created on the FortiAuthenticator device in multiple ways:

- Administrator creates a user and specifies their username and password.
- Administrator creates a username and a random password is automatically emailed to the user.
- Users are created by importing either a CSV file or from an external LDAP server.

Users can self-register for password-based authentication. This reduces the workload for the system administrator. Users can choose their own passwords or have a randomly generated password provided in the browser or sent to them via email or SMS. Self-registration can be instant, or it can require administrator approval. See [Self-registration on page 93](#).

Once created, users are automatically part of the RADIUS Authentication system and can be authenticated remotely.

See [User management on page 1](#) for more information about user accounts.

## Two-factor authentication

Two-factor authentication increases security by requiring multiple pieces of information on top of the username and password. There are generally two factors:

- Something the user knows, usually a password,
- Something the user has, such as a FortiToken device.

Requiring the two factors increases the difficulty for an unauthorized person to impersonate a legitimate user.

To enable two-factor authentication, configure both password-based and token-based authentication in the user's account.

FortiAuthenticator token-based authentication requires the user to enter a numeric token, or one-time password (OTP), at login. Two types of numerical tokens are supported:

- **Time-based (TOTP):** The token passcode is generated using a combination of the time and a secret key which is known only by the token and the FortiAuthenticator device. The token password changes at regular time intervals, and FortiAuthenticator is able to validate the entered passcode using the time and the secret seed information for that token.

Passcodes can only be used a single time (one time passcodes) to prevent replay attacks. Fortinet has the following time based tokens:

- FortiToken hardware
- FortiToken Mobile, running on a compatible smartphone

For more information about TOTP, see [RFC 6238](#).

- **Event-based or HMAC-based (HOTP):** The token passcode is generated using an event trigger and a secret key. Event tokens are supported using a valid email account and a mobile phone number with SMS service.

FortiToken devices, FortiToken Mobile apps, email addresses, and phone numbers must be configured in the user's account.

For more information about HOTP, see [RFC 4226](#).

Only the administrator can configure token-based authentication. See [Configuring token based authentication on page 1](#).

## Authentication servers

FortiAuthenticator has built-in RADIUS and LDAP servers. It also supports the use of remote RADIUS and LDAP (which can include Windows AD servers).

The built-in servers are best used where there is no existing authentication infrastructure, or when a separate set of credentials is required. You build a user account database on FortiAuthenticator. The database can include

additional user information such as street addresses and phone numbers that cannot be stored in a FortiGate unit's user authentication database. To authenticate, either LDAP or RADIUS can be used. The remote LDAP option adds your FortiGate units to an existing LDAP structure. Optionally, you can add two-factor authentication to remote LDAP.

## RADIUS

If you use RADIUS, you must enable RADIUS in each user account. FortiGate units must be registered as RADIUS authentication clients under **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients**. See [RADIUS service on page 1](#). On each FortiGate unit that will use the RADIUS protocol, FortiAuthenticator must be configured as a RADIUS server under **User & Device > RADIUS Servers**.

## Built-in LDAP

If you use built-in LDAP, you will need to configure the LDAP directory tree. You add users from the user database to the appropriate nodes in the LDAP hierarchy. See [Creating the directory tree on page 1](#). On each FortiGate unit that will use LDAP protocol, FortiAuthenticator must be configured as an LDAP server under **User & Device > LDAP Servers**.

## Remote LDAP

Remote LDAP is used when an existing LDAP directory exists and should be used for authentication. User information can be selectively synchronized with FortiAuthenticator, but the user credentials (passwords) remain on, and are validated against the LDAP directory.

To utilize remote LDAP, the authentication client (such as a FortiGate device) must connect to the FortiAuthenticator device using RADIUS to authenticate the user information (see **User & Device > RADIUS Servers**). The password is then proxied to the LDAP server for validation, while any associated token passcode is validated locally.

## Machine authentication

Machine (or computer) authentication is a feature of the Windows supplicant that allows a Windows machine to authenticate to a network via 802.1X prior to user authentication.

Machine authentication is performed by the computer itself, which sends its computer object credentials before the Windows logon screen appears. User authentication is performed after the user logs in to Windows.

Based on the computer credentials provided during machine authentication, limited access to the network can be granted. For example, access can be granted to just the Active Directory server to enable user authentication.

Following machine authentication, user authentication can take place to authenticate that the user is also valid, and to then grant further access to the network.

Machine authentication commonly occurs on boot up or log out, and not, for example, when a device awakens from hibernation. Because of this, the FortiAuthenticator caches authenticated devices based on their MAC addresses for a configurable period (see [General on page 1](#)). For more information on cached users, see [Windows device logins on page 1](#)

To configure machine authentication, see [Clients on page 1](#).

## User account policies

General policies for user accounts include lockout settings, password policies, and custom user fields.

### General

To configure general account policy settings, go to **Authentication > User Account Policies > General**.

**Edit General Account Policy Settings**

General Settings	
<input type="checkbox"/> PCI DSS 3.2 two-factor authentication	
Expire device login after:	<input type="text" value="480"/> minutes (5-1440)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Automatically purge disabled user accounts	
Frequency:	<input type="radio"/> Daily <input checked="" type="radio"/> Weekly <input type="radio"/> Monthly
Time:	<input type="text" value="00:30"/> <a href="#">Now</a>
Purge users that are disabled due to the following reasons:	<input type="checkbox"/> Manually disabled <input type="checkbox"/> Login inactivity <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Account expired
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Discard stale RADIUS authentication requests	
Request stale after:	<input type="text" value="8"/> seconds (3-360)
Expire inactive RADIUS accounting session after:	<input type="text" value="60"/> minutes (5-1440)

Configure the following settings:

<b>PCI DSS 3.2 two-factor authentication</b>	Enable to always collect all authentication factors before indicating a success or failure.
<b>Expire device login after</b>	Login session timeout for Windows machine authentication via 802.1X.
<b>Automatically purge disabled user accounts</b>	Enable to automatically purge disabled user accounts. Select the frequency of the purge in the <b>Frequency</b> field: <b>Daily</b> , <b>Weekly</b> , or <b>Monthly</b> . Enter the time of the purge in the <b>Time</b> field: <b>Now</b> to set the time to the current time, or select the clock icon to choose a time: <b>Now</b> , <b>Midnight</b> , <b>6 a.m.</b> , or <b>Noon</b> .

<b>Purge users that are disabled due to the following reasons</b>	Set the reason for purging disabled users: <b>Manually disabled</b> , <b>Login inactivity</b> , or <b>Account expired</b> .
<b>Discard stale RADIUS authentication requests</b>	Enable to select a time after which RADIUS authentication requests are considered stale and are discarded, from 3 - 360 seconds (or six minutes). The default is set to 8 seconds.
<b>Expire inactive RADIUS accounting session after</b>	Enter a time after which RADIUS accounting sessions timeout, from 5 to 1440 minutes (or five minutes to one day). The default is set to 60 minutes.

## PCI DSS 3.2 two-factor authentication

The login flows for RADIUS authentication, SAML IdP, Guest Portals, and GUI Login all meet PCI DSS 3.2 standards regarding multi-FortiAuthenticator authentication.

In the case where the **Bypass FortiToken authentication when user is from a trusted subnet** option is enabled (under **Authentication > SAML IdP > Service Providers**), *and* the user is logging in from a trusted subnet, the login flow reverts to password-only regardless of the PCI mode.

The GUI login page is hard-coded to **Apply two-factor authentication if available (authenticate any user)**, so it will behave the same as the guest portal.

All failed authentications will return the same generic message, so as not to reveal any clue to an attacker about which piece of information was valid or invalid:

"Please enter correct credentials. Note that the password is case-sensitive."

Remote login to the CLI (i.e. Telnet, SSH) also complies with the new PCI requirements.

## Guest portal exception

There is one exception for guest portals. When a user has exceeded their time and/or data usage limit, the FortiAuthenticator shows the "Usage exceeded" replacement message. The best behavior would be to only show the replacement message if the credentials are valid. However, this would require a major change in the internal flow of the current authentication implementation. Instead, the FortiAuthenticator only requires that the account name be valid (not the credentials). The downside is that it opens the door for leaking valid account names. Nonetheless, it is deemed acceptable because:

1. Account name leakage prevention is not a PCI requirement (just a best practice).
2. Leaked account names are not usable because they are disabled (due to exceeded usage).
3. Disabled accounts can't be leveraged to brute-force credentials (in the hope of using them if an account gets re-enabled/usage extended).

## Lockouts

For various security reasons, you may want to lock a user's account. For example, repeated unsuccessful attempts to log in might indicate an attempt at unauthorized access.

Information on locked-out users can be viewed in the **Top User Lockouts** widget, see [Top User Lockouts widget on page 1](#).

Currently locked-out users can be viewed in **Monitor > Authentication > Locked-out Users**, see [Inactive users on page 1](#).

### To configure the user logout policy:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Account Policies > Lockouts**.
2. Configure the following settings, then select **OK** to apply any changes:

<b>Enable user account logout policy</b>	Enable user account logout for failed login attempts and enter the maximum number of allowed failed attempts in the <b>Maximum failed login attempts</b> field.
<b>Specify logout period</b>	<p>Enable to specify the length of the logout period, from 60 to 86400 seconds (or one minute to one day). After the logout period expires, the <b>Maximum failed login attempts</b> number applies again.</p> <p>When disabled, locked out users will be permanently disabled until an administrator manually re-enables them.</p>
<b>Enable inactive user logout</b>	Select to enable disabling a user account if there is no login activity for a given number of days. In the <b>Lock out inactive users after</b> field, enter the number of days, from 1 to 1825 (or one day to five years), after which a user is locked out.

## Passwords

Multiple password policies can be created and implemented for different groups, as opposed to enforcing a global password policy.

When a user is a member of multiple user groups, FortiAuthenticator applies the strictest password policy settings. For example, if two password policies have different password expiry periods, FortiAuthenticator applies the shortest expiry period.



For load-balancing HA (A-A), new password policy settings in user groups must be manually duplicated on the backup unit(s).

You can enforce a minimum length and complexity for user passwords, and can force users to change their passwords periodically.

For information on setting a user's password, and password recovery options, see [Editing a user on page 1](#).

Go to **Authentication > User Account Policies > Passwords** and select **Create New** to configure a password policy.

Create New Password Policy	
Name:	<input type="text"/>
<b>User Password Complexity</b>	
Minimum length:	<input type="text" value="8"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check for password complexity	
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum upper-case letters:	<input type="text" value="2"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum lower-case letters:	<input type="text" value="2"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum numeric characters:	<input type="text" value="2"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum non-alphanumeric characters:	<input type="text" value="1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use non-alphanumeric characters in random passwords	<input type="text" value="\$&amp;!%#~"/>
<b>User Password Change Policy</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable password expiry	
Maximum password age:	<input type="text" value="90"/> days (min. 14 days)
Send password renewal reminder on:	<input type="text" value="14,7,3,1"/> day(s) before expiry.
<input type="checkbox"/> Enforce password history	
Number of passwords to remember:	<input type="text" value="3"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable random password expiry	
Random passwords expire after:	<input type="text" value="72"/> hours (1-168)
New user set password email link expiry:	<input type="text" value="24"/> hours (1-168)
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

### To set password complexity requirements:

- Under **User Password Complexity**, enter the minimum password length in the **Minimum length** field.



The default length is 8. The minimum length is 0, which means that there is no minimum length but the password cannot be empty.

- Optionally, select **Check for password complexity** and then configure the following password requirements as needed:
  - **Minimum upper-case letters**
  - **Minimum lower-case letters**
  - **Minimum numeric characters**
  - **Minimum non-alphanumeric characters**  
You can also enable **Use non-alphanumeric characters in random passwords** and enter the characters in the field provided.
- Select **OK** to apply the password length and complexity settings.



**To set a password change policy:**

1. Under **User Password Change Policy**, optionally select **Enable password expiry**, then set the **Maximum password age**.  
The default maximum password age is 90 days. The minimum value allowed is 14 days.  
You can also set the password renewal reminder intervals in the **Send password renewal reminder on** field available, separating each entry by a comma. The default is every 14, 7, 3, and 1 days.
2. Optionally, select **Enforce password history** to prevent users from creating a new password that is the same as their current password or recently used passwords. Then, enter the **Number of passwords to remember**. New passwords must not match any of the remembered passwords.  
For example, if three passwords are remembered (set by default), users cannot reuse any of their three previous passwords.
3. Optionally, select **Enable random password expiry** to force randomly generated passwords to expire. Then, enter the number of hours after which a randomly generated password will expire in the **Random passwords expire after** field.  
The default randomly generated password expiry age is 72 hours (or three days). The value can be set from 1 to 168 hours (or seven days).  
You can also set the number of hours users have to set a new password upon receiving a new password email link. The default is 24 hours. The value can be set from 1 to 168 hours (or seven days).
4. Select **OK** to create the password policy.

## Custom user fields

Custom fields can be created to be included in the user information of local users. See [Local users on page 1](#) for information about creating and managing local users.

To edit custom fields, go to **Authentication > User Account Policies > Custom User Fields**. A maximum of three custom fields can be added.

## Tokens

As of FortiAuthenticator 4.2, all FortiToken settings have been moved here to be configured and controlled separately from the **General** user account policy settings. Additionally, you can configure the FortiAuthenticator to allow the Windows Agent to cache future tokens for users when they're offline by using the **Enable offline support** setting.

To configure token policy settings, go to **Authentication > User Account Policies > Tokens**.

FortiTokens	
TOTP authentication window size:	<input type="text" value="1"/> time steps (1-60)
HOTP authentication window size:	<input type="text" value="3"/> counts (1-100)
TOTP sync window size:	<input type="text" value="60"/> time steps (5-480)
HOTP sync window size:	<input type="text" value="100"/> counts (5-500)
Seed encryption passphrase:	<input type="text"/>
FAC Agent Offline FortiToken Support	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable offline support	
Shared secret:	<input type="text"/>
TOTP cache size:	<input type="text" value="7"/> days (1-14)
HOTP cache size:	<input type="text" value="10"/> counts (1-1000)
FortiToken Mobile Transfer	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable token transfer feature	
Email/SMS	
Token timeout:	<input type="text" value="60"/> seconds (10-3600)

Configure the following settings:

FortiTokens		
<b>TOTP authentication window size</b>		Configure the length of time, plus or minus the current time, that a FortiToken code is deemed valid, from 1 - 60 minutes. The default is set to 1 minute.
<b>HOTP authentication window size</b>		Configure the count, or number of times, that the FortiToken passcode is deemed valid, from 1 - 100 counts. The default is set to 3 counts.
<b>TOTP sync window size</b>		Configure the period of time in which the entry of an invalid token can trigger a synchronization, from 5 - 480 minutes. The default is set to 60 minutes.  If the token is incorrect according to the FortiToken valid window, but exists in the sync window, synchronization will be initiated.
<b>HOTP sync window size</b>		Configure the count, or number of times, that the entry of an invalid token can trigger a synchronization, from 5 - 500 counts. The default is set to 100 counts.  If the token is incorrect according to the FortiToken valid window, but exists in the sync window, synchronization will be initiated.

<b>Seed encryption passphrase</b>	Passphrase to derive a seed encryption key from, for seed returned when provisioning a FortiToken Mobile via web service (REST API).
<b>FortiAuthenticator Agent Offline FortiToken Support</b>	
<b>Enable offline support</b>	<p>Enable this option to set the following:</p> <p><b>Shared secret:</b> Set the shared secret used in offline support.</p> <p><b>TOTP cache size:</b> Period of time after last login to pre-cache offline TOTP tokens, from 1 - 14 days. The default is set to 7 days.</p> <p><b>HOTP cache size:</b> Period of time after last login to pre-cache offline HOTP tokens, from 1 - 1000 counts. The default is set to 10 counts.</p>
<b>FortiToken Mobile Transfer</b>	
<b>Enable token transfer feature</b>	Enable to let users securely transfer FortiToken Mobile tokens from one mobile device to another. See <a href="#">"Transferring FortiToken Mobile tokens from old to new devices"</a> on page 67 below.
<b>Email/SMS</b>	
<b>Token timeout</b>	Set a time after which a token code sent via email or SMS will be marked as expired, from 10 - 3600 seconds (or one hour). The default is set to 60 seconds.

### Transferring FortiToken Mobile tokens from old to new devices

Changing devices requires the user to install new tokens on their new device, since the unique device ID is used to form the seed decryption key.



If you wipe data from your device, or upgrade your device, you will need to re-provision your accounts.

The option to **Enable token transfer feature** is available under **Authentication > User Account Policies > Tokens**.

FortiToken Mobile Transfer
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable token transfer feature

If it is not enabled, FortiAuthenticator blocks all requests to **Transfer Activation Code** (see below).

The process for transferring a token to a new device is as follows:

1. The end user selects a new FortiToken Mobile menu option: **Initiate Token Transfer**.
2. FortiToken Mobile requests a new "Token Transfer Request" service from FortiCare, and includes the token data.
3. FortiCare stores the token data and creates a **Transfer Activation Code**.
4. FortiCare signals back to FortiToken Mobile on the old device that "Transfer Initialization" is complete.
5. On the old device, FortiToken Mobile sends a request to FortiAuthenticator for the **Transfer Activation Code**.

6. FortiAuthenticator retrieves the **Transfer Activation Code** from FortiCare and signals back to FortiToken Mobile (on the old device) that the **Transfer Activation Code** request was successful.
7. FortiAuthenticator sends either an email or SMS to the end user with the transfer code (as a QR code in the case of email).
8. On the new device, the end user selects the FortiToken Mobile menu option **Complete Token Transfer** and enters the transfer code (or scans the QR code).
9. FortiToken Mobile receives the token data from FortiCare and installs the token(s) on the new device.



All tokens are removed on the old device once the transfer is complete.

---

## User management

FortiAuthenticator's user database has the benefit of being able to associate extensive information with each user, as you would expect of RADIUS and LDAP servers. This information includes whether the user is an administrator, uses RADIUS authentication, or uses two-factor authentication, and includes personal information such as full name, address, password recovery options, and the groups that the user belongs to.

The RADIUS server on FortiAuthenticator is configured using default settings. For a user to authenticate using RADIUS, the option **Allow RADIUS Authentication** must be selected for that user's entry, and the FortiGate unit must be added to the authentication client list. See [RADIUS service on page 1](#).

## Administrators

Administrator accounts on FortiAuthenticator are standard user accounts that are flagged as administrators. Both local users and remote LDAP users can be administrators.

Once flagged as an administrator, a user account's administrator privileges can be set to either full access or customized to select their administrator rights for different parts of FortiAuthenticator.

The subnets from which administrators are able to log in can be restricted by entering the IP addresses and netmasks of trusted management subnets.

There are log events for administrator configuration activities. Administrators can also be configured to authenticate to the local system using two-factor authentication.

An account marked as an administrator can be used for RADIUS authentication if **Allow RADIUS Authentication** is selected. See [RADIUS service on page 1](#). These administrator accounts only support Password Authentication Protocol (PAP).

See [Configuring a user as an administrator on page 74](#) for more information.

## Groups for administrators

Local and remote user accounts with administrator or sponsor roles can be entered into groups. This provides the following benefits:

- Group filtering of administrators.
- A single account for individuals needing both administrator and user roles.

- Inclusion of RADIUS attributes from groups in RADIUS Access-Accept responses.

## Local users

Local user accounts can be created, imported, exported, edited, and deleted as needed. Expired local user accounts can be purged manually or automatically (see [General on page 1](#)).

To manage local user accounts, go to **Authentication > User Management > Local Users**.

The local user account list shows the following information:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new user.
<b>Import</b>	<p>Select to import local user accounts from a CSV file or FortiGate configuration file.</p> <p>If using a CSV file, it must have one record per line, with the following format: user name (30 characters max), first name (30 characters max), last name (30 characters max), email address (75 characters max), mobile number (25 characters max), password (optional, 128 characters max).</p> <p>If the optional password is left out of the import file, the user will be emailed temporary login credentials and requested to configure a new password.</p> <p>Note that, even if an optional field is empty, it still must be defined with a comma.</p>
<b>Export Users</b>	Select to export the user account list to a CSV file.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected user account.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected user account or accounts.
<b>Disabled Users</b>	<p><b>Purge Disabled:</b> This offers the option to choose which type of disabled users to purge. All users matching the type(s) selection will be deleted.</p> <p><b>Re-enable:</b> This allows the administrator to re-enable disabled accounts. Expired users accounts can only be re-enabled individually.</p>
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term in the search field, then select <b>Search</b> to search the user account list.
<b>User</b>	The user accounts' usernames.
<b>First name</b>	The user accounts' first names, if included.
<b>Last name</b>	The user accounts' last names, if included.
<b>Email address</b>	The user accounts' email addresses, if included.

<b>Admin</b>	If the user account is set as an administrator, a green circle with a check mark is shown.
<b>Status</b>	If the user account is enabled, a green circle with a check mark is shown.
<b>Token</b>	The token that is assigned to that user account. Select the token name to edit the FortiToken, see <a href="#">FortiToken device maintenance on page 1</a> .
<b>Token requested</b>	The status of the user's token request.
<b>Groups</b>	The group or groups to which the user account belongs.
<b>Authentication Methods</b>	The authentication method used for the user account.
<b>Expiration</b>	The date and time that the user account expires, if an expiration date and time have been set for the account.

## Adding a user

When creating a user account, there are three ways to handle the password:

1. The administrator assigns a password immediately and communicates it to the user.
2. FortiAuthenticator creates a random password and automatically emails it to the new user.
3. No password is assigned because only token-based authentication will be used.

### To add a new user:

1. In the local users list, select **Create New**. The **Create New Local User** window opens.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Username</b>	Enter a username for the user.
<b>Password creation</b>	<p>Select one of the options from the dropdown menu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Specify a password:</b> Manually enter a password in the <b>Password</b> field, then reenter the password in the <b>Password confirmation</b> field.</li> <li>• <b>Set and email a random password:</b> Enter an email address to which to send the password in the <b>Email address</b> field, then reenter the email address in the <b>Confirm email address</b> field.</li> <li>• <b>No password, FortiToken authentication only:</b> After you select <b>OK</b>, you will need to associate a FortiToken device with this user. See <a href="#">FortiAuthenticator and FortiTokens on page 1</a>.</li> </ul>
<b>Allow RADIUS authentication</b>	For a user to authenticate using RADIUS, this must be enabled.

<b>Force password change on next logon</b>	Enable or disable the option for users to change their local password on FortiAuthenticator at first logon. This feature prevents administrators from having to call or email the franchisee to deliver user credentials, which is not a secure method of delivery and adds additional time to the onboarding process.
<b>Role</b>	Select whether the new account is for an <b>Administrator</b> , <b>Sponsor</b> , or regular <b>User</b> . Administrators can either have full permissions or have specific administrator profiles applied. Regular users can have their account expirations settings configured.
<b>Enable account expiration</b>	Select to enable user account expiration, either after a specific amount of time has elapsed, or on a specific date.
<b>Expire after</b>	<p>Select when the account will expire:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Set length of time:</b> Enter the number of hours, days, months, or years until the account expires.</li> <li>• <b>Set an expire date:</b> Enter the date on which the account will expire, either by manually typing it in, or by selecting the calendar icon and selecting a date.</li> </ul>

3. Select **OK** to create the new user. You will be redirected to the **Change local user** window to continue the user configuration in greater detail.

If the password creation method was set to **No password, FortiToken authentication only**, you will be required to associate a FortiToken with the user before the user can be enabled.

## Editing a user

User accounts can be edited at any time. To edit a user, go to the user account list, select the user you will be editing, and select **Edit** from the toolbar. Conversely, select the username in the user list.

**Change local user**

Username: **leela**

☐ Disabled

☒ Password-based authentication [\[Change Password\]](#)

☒ Token-based authentication

Deliver token code by: ☐ FortiToken ☐ Email ☐ SMS ☐ Dual (Email & SMS)

☐ Allow RADIUS authentication

☒ Enable account expiration

Expire after: ☒ Set length of time ☐ Set an expiry date

---

**User Role**

Role: ☐ Administrator ☐ Sponsor ☒ User

☐ Allow LDAP browsing

▶ User Information

▶ Alternative Email Addresses

▶ Password Recovery Options

▶ Groups

▶ Usage Information

▶ Email Routing

▶ RADIUS Attributes

▶ Certificate Bindings

▶ Devices

The following information can be viewed or configured:

<b>Username</b>	The username cannot be changed.
<b>Disabled</b>	Select to disable the user account.
<b>Password-based authentication</b>	Select to enable password-based authentication. The user's password can be changed by selecting <b>Change Password</b> .
<b>Token-based authentication</b>	Select to enable FortiToken-based authentication. See <a href="#">Configuring token-based authentication on page 74</a> .
<b>Allow RADIUS authentication</b>	Select to allow RADIUS authentication. This applies only to regular users.
<b>Enable account expiration</b>	Select to enable account expiration and specify the account's expiration. See <a href="#">Enable account expiration on page 71</a> .
<b>User Role</b>	Configure the user's role.



<b>Role</b>	Select <b>Administrator</b> , <b>Sponsor</b> , or <b>User</b> .  If setting a user as an administrator, see <a href="#">Configuring a user as an administrator on page 74</a> .
<b>Allow LDAP browsing</b>	Select to allow LDAP browsing. This applies only to regular users.
<b>Full permission</b>	Enable to grant this administrator full permission, or enter an Admin profile in the field provided. This applies only to administrators.
<b>Web service access</b>	Enable to allow this administrator to access the web services either through a REST API or using a client application. This applies only to administrators.
<b>Restrict admin login from trusted management subnets only</b>	Enable and enter trusted IP addresses and netmasks for restricted administrator login access. This applies only to administrators.
<b>User Information</b>	Enter user information, such as their address and phone number. See <a href="#">Adding user information on page 75</a> .
<b>Alternative email addresses</b>	Add alternate email addresses for the user.
<b>Password Recovery Options</b>	Configure password recovery options for the user. See <a href="#">Configuring password recovery options on page 75</a> .
<b>Groups</b>	Assign the user to one or more groups. See <a href="#">User groups on page 83</a> .
<b>Usage Information</b>	View the user's usage information, including bytes in/out, time used, and the option to reset the usage statistics.
<b>Email Routing</b>	Enter a mail host and routing address into their respective fields to configure email routing for the user.
<b>RADIUS Attributes</b>	Add RADIUS attributes. See <a href="#">RADIUS attributes on page 89</a> .
<b>Certificate Bindings</b>	Add, edit, or removed certificate bindings for the user account. See <a href="#">Configuring certificate bindings on page 76</a> . Select the certificate name to view the certificate, or select the <b>Revoke Certificate</b> button to revoke the certificate.
<b>Devices</b>	Add devices, based on MAC address, for the user account.

Select **OK** when you have finished editing the user's information and settings.

## Configuring token-based authentication

Token-based authentication requires either a FortiToken device or a mobile device with the FortiToken Mobile app installed, or a device with either email or SMS capability.

FortiToken and FortiToken Mobile tokens must first be registered under **Authentication > User Management > FortiTokens**. For more information, see [FortiTokens on page 87](#).

### To configure an account for token-based authentication:

1. To view the token-based authentication options, edit a user and select **Token-based authentication**.
2. Select one of the following token delivery methods:
  - **FortiToken**, then select the FortiToken device serial number from the **FortiToken Hardware** or **FortiToken Mobile** dropdown menus, as appropriate.  
The device must be known to FortiAuthenticator. See **FortiToken devices and mobile apps on page 1**.  
Optionally, select **Configure a temporary e-mail/SMS token** to receive a temporary token code via email or SMS.
  - **Email**, then enter the user's email address in the **User Information** section.
  - **SMS**, then enter the user's mobile number in the **User Information** section.
  - **Dual (Email & SMS)**, then enter the user's email address and mobile number in the **User Information** section.
3. Select **Test Token** to validate the token passcode. The **Test Email Token** or **Test SMS Token** window opens (depending on your selection).
  - For email and SMS tokens, confirm that the contact information is correct, select **Next**, then enter the token code received via email or SMS.
  - Select **Back** to return to edit the contact information, select **Verify** to verify the token passcode, or select **Resend Code** if a new code is required.
  - For FortiToken, enter the token code in the **Token code** field, then select **Verify** to verify the token passcode.
4. Select **OK**.



By default, token code verification must be completed within 60 seconds after the token code is sent by email or SMS. To change this timeout, go to **Authentication > User Account Policies > Tokens** and modify the **Email/SMS Token timeout** field. For more information, see [Lockouts on page 1](#).

## Configuring a user as an administrator

For more information, see [Administrators on page 68](#).

### To set a user as an administrator:

1. Edit a user and set **Role** to **Administrator** under the **User Role** section.
2. Enable **Full permission** to give the administrator full administrative privileges, or enter **Admin profiles** to customize the administrator's permissions.
3. Optionally, enable **Web service access** to allow the administrator to access the web services via a REST API or FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows.

4. Select **Restrict admin login from trusted management subnets only**, then enter the IP addresses and netmasks of trusted management subnets in the table, to restrict the subnets from which an administrator can log in.
5. Select **OK** to apply the changes to the administrator account.

### Adding user information

Some user information can be required depending on how the user is configured. For example, if the user is using token-based authentication by SMS, a mobile number and SMS gateway must be configured before the user can be enabled.

The following user information can be entered:

<b>First name</b>	<b>Last name</b>
<b>Email address</b>	<b>Phone number</b>
<b>Mobile number</b>	<b>SMS gateway:</b> select from the dropdown menu. Select <b>Test SMS</b> to send a test message.
<b>Street address</b>	
<b>City</b>	<b>State/Province</b>
<b>Country:</b> Select from the dropdown menu.	
<b>Language:</b> Select a specific language from the dropdown menu, or use the default language.	
<b>Organization:</b> Select an organization from the dropdown menu. See <a href="#">Organizations on page 85</a> .	

### Configuring password recovery options

To replace a lost or forgotten password, FortiAuthenticator can send the user a password recovery link by email or in a browser in response to a pre-arranged security question. The user must then set a new password.

#### To configure password recovery by email:

1. Edit a user and ensure that the user has an email address entered. See [Adding user information on page 75](#).
2. Under **Password Recovery Options** section, enable **Email recovery**.  
In the event that additional email addresses have been configured under **Alternative Email Addresses**, an email will be sent to all configured email addresses.
3. Select **OK** to apply the changes.

#### To configure password recovery by security question:

1. Edit a user and, under **Password Recovery Options**, enable **Security question**, and select **Edit**.
2. Choose one of the questions from the dropdown menu, or select **Write my own question** and enter a question in the **Custom question** field.
3. Enter the answer for the question in the **Answer** field.
4. Select **OK** to create the security question.
5. Select **OK** again to apply the changes to the user account.

**How the user can configure password recovery by security question:**

1. Log in to the user account.
2. Select **Edit Profile** at the top left of the page.
3. Under **Password Recovery Options**, select **Security Question**, and select **Edit**.
4. Choose one of the questions in the list, or select **Write my own question** and enter a question in the **Custom question** field.
5. Enter the answer for your question.
6. Select **OK**.

**How the user can configure password recovery by email:**

1. Log in to the user account.
2. Select **Edit Profile** at the top left of the page.
3. Under **Password Recovery Options**, select **Email recovery**.
4. Optionally, select **Alternative email addresses** and enter additional email addresses for this user.
5. Select **OK**.

**How the user recovers from a lost password:**

1. Browse to the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator.  
Security policies must be in place on the FortiGate unit to allow these sessions to be established.
2. At the login screen, select **Forgot my password**.
3. Select to recover your password either by **Username** or **Email**.
4. Enter either your username or email address as selected in the previous step, and select **Next**.  
This information is used to select the user account. If your information does not match a user account, password recovery cannot be completed.
5. Do one of the following:
  - If an email address was entered, check your email, open the email and select the password recovery link.
  - If a username was entered, answer the security question and select **Next**.
6. On the **Reset Password** page, enter and confirm a new password and select **Next**.  
The user can now authenticate using the new password.

**Active Directory users password reset**

To allow Active Directory (AD) users to reset their password from the main login page, follow the same workflow for resetting a local user's password described above.

The **Password Recovery Options** setting is included in the remote LDAP users configuration page.

This feature is available for both self-service and guest portals.

**Configuring certificate bindings**

To use a local certificate as part of authenticating a user, you need to:

- Create a user certificate for the user (see [To create a new certificate on page 1](#) for more information).
- Create a binding to that certificate in the user's account.

**To create a binding to a certificate in a user's account:**

1. Edit a user and expand the **Certificate Bindings** section.
2. Select **Add Binding**.
3. Select either **Local CA** or **Trusted CA** from the **CA certificate** dropdown menu, and select the applicable CA certificate.
4. Enter the **Common Name** on the certificate. For example, if the certificate says `CN=rgreen` then enter `rgreen`.
5. Select **OK** to add the new binding.

## Remote users

Remote LDAP users must be imported into the FortiAuthenticator user database from LDAP servers. For more information, see [LDAP on page 1](#).



Note that you will only be able to import a maximum of five remote users if you have an unlicensed version of FortiAuthenticator-VM.



A FortiToken device already allocated to a local account cannot be allocated to an LDAP user as well; it must be a different FortiToken device.

Remote RADIUS users can be created, migrated to LDAP users, edited, and deleted.

## LDAP users

To import remote LDAP users:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > Remote Users**, ensure that **LDAP users** is selected, and select **Import**.
2. Select a server from the **Remote LDAP server** dropdown menu, then select **Import users** or **Import users by group membership**, and select **Go**.



An LDAP server must already be configured to select it in the dropdown menu. For information on adding a remote LDAP server, see [Remote authentication servers on page 1](#).

The **Import Remote LDAP Users** or **Import Remote LDAP Users by Group Memberships** window opens in a new browser window.

**Import Remote LDAP Users by Group Memberships**

**LDAP server:** 192.168.1.2:389

**Filter:**  Apply Clear [\[ Configure user attributes \]](#)

**Member attribute**  Apply

☒ Filter child nodes and show number of children

Select user(s) to import below. Only LDAP entries that are marked **green** can be imported (indicating that these entries match the configured LDAP filter **and** their usernames can be found using the configured username attribute). You can configure other user mapping attributes above.

Only users that are members of groups will be shown below (users must be part of member attribute of the groups).

Select Visible Select None

- ☒ CN=Computers (9)
- ☒ CN=System (8)
- ☒ CN=Users (9)
- ☒ OU=Domain Controllers (1)

**Distinguished name:**

**Organization:** [ Please Select ] ▼

OK Cancel

3. Optionally, enter a **Filter** string to reduce the number of entries returned, and then select **Apply**, or select **Clear** to clear the filters.



Please note that the **Member attribute** field is only available if you select to **Import users by group membership**. Use this field to specify the filter by which users will be shown. In the example, the default attribute (**member**) will only show users that are members of groups (users must be part of member attribute of the groups).

4. The default configuration imports the attributes commonly associated with Microsoft Active Directory LDAP implementations. Select **Configure user attributes** to edit the remote LDAP user mapping attributes. Selecting the field **FirstName**, for example, presents a list of detected attributes that can be selected. This list is not exhaustive as additional, non-displayed attributes may be available for import. Consult your LDAP administrator for a full list of available attributes.
5. Select the entries you want to import.
6. Optionally, select an organization from the **Organization** dropdown menu to associate the imported users with a specific organization. See [Organizations on page 85](#) for more information.
7. Select **OK**.  
The amount of time required to import the remote users will vary depending on the number of users being imported.

#### To add two-factor authentication to a remote LDAP user:

1. Edit the remote user, select **Token-based authentication**, and follow the same steps as when editing a local user ([Editing a user on page 71](#)).
2. Configure the **User Role**, **User Information**, **RADIUS Attributes**, and **Certificate Bindings** for the user as needed.
3. Select **OK** to apply the changes.

## RADIUS users

To view remote RADIUS users, go to **Authentication > User Management > Remote Users** and select **RADIUS users** in the toolbar. See [RADIUS on page 1](#) for more information about remote RADIUS servers.

The following options are available (when remote RADIUS users are available to edit):

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new remote RADIUS user.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected user or users.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected user.
<b>Re-enable</b>	Select to re-enable the status of a user that has been disabled.
<b>Migrate</b>	Select to migrate the selected user or users. See <a href="#">To migrate RADIUS users to LDAP users: on page 80</a> .
<b>Token</b>	Select to either <b>Enforce</b> or <b>Bypass</b> token-based authentication for the selected user(s).
<b>Search</b>	Search the remote RADIUS user list.
<b>Username</b>	The remote user's name.
<b>Remote RADIUS server</b>	The remote RADIUS server or which the user resides.
<b>Admin</b>	Displays whether or not the user is configured as an administrator.
<b>Status</b>	Displays whether or not the user is enabled or disabled.
<b>Token</b>	The FortiToken used by the user, if applicable.
<b>Token Requested</b>	Displays whether or not a FortiToken has been requested for the user.
<b>Enforce token-based authentication</b>	Displays whether or not token-based authentication is enforced.

### To create a new remote RADIUS user:

1. From the remote user list, select **RADIUS users** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Remote RADIUS</b>	Select the remote RADIUS server on which the user will be created from the dropdown menu. For more information on remote RADIUS servers, see <a href="#">RADIUS on page 1</a> .
<b>Username</b>	Enter a username.

<b>Enforce token-based authentication if configured below</b>	Select to enforce token-based authentication, if you are configuring token-based authentication.
<b>Token-based authentication</b>	Select to configure token-based authentication.
<b>Deliver token code by</b>	<p>Select the method by which token codes will be delivered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>FortiToken</b>: Select the FortiToken device serial number from the <b>FortiToken Hardware</b> or <b>FortiToken Mobile</b> dropdown menus.</li> <li>• <b>Email</b>: Enter the user's email address in the <b>User Information</b> section.</li> <li>• <b>SMS</b>: Enter the user's mobile number in the <b>User Information</b> section.</li> <li>• <b>Dual (Email &amp; SMS)</b>: Enter the user's email address and mobile number in the <b>User Information</b> section.</li> </ul> <p>For <b>FortiToken</b>, the device must be known to FortiAuthenticator. See <a href="#">FortiToken devices and mobile apps on page 1</a>.</p> <p>In addition, you can optionally select <b>Configure a temporary e-mail/SMS token</b> to receive a temporary token code via email or SMS.</p>
<b>Allow RADIUS authentication</b>	Enable or disable RADIUS authentication.
<b>User Role</b>	Select whether the remote user is either an <b>Administrator</b> (along with related permissions) or a regular <b>User</b> .
<b>User Information</b>	<p>Enter user information as needed. The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Email address</b></li> <li>• <b>Mobile number</b> and <b>SMS gateway</b></li> <li>• <b>Language</b></li> <li>• <b>Organization</b> - see <a href="#">Organizations on page 85</a>.</li> </ul>

3. Select **OK** to create the new remote RADIUS user.

#### To migrate RADIUS users to LDAP users:

1. From the remote RADIUS users list (see [Learned RADIUS users on page 1](#)), select the user or users you need to migrate, then select **Migrate** from the toolbar.
2. Select an LDAP server from the dropdown menu and select **Next**.
3. Enter the distinguished names for the users that are being migrated, or browse the LDAP tree (see [Directory tree overview on page 1](#)) to find the users.
4. Select **Migrate** to migrate the user or users.

## Remote user sync rules

Synchronization rules can be created to control how and when remote users are synchronized. To view a list of the remote user synchronization rules, go to **Authentication > User Management > Remote User Sync Rules**.



**To create a new remote user synchronization rule:**

1. From the **Remote User Sync Rules** page, select **Create New**.
2. Configure the following settings:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the synchronization rule.
<b>Remote LDAP</b>	Select a remote LDAP server from the dropdown menu. To configure a remote LDAP server, see <a href="#">Remote authentication servers on page 1</a> .
<b>Sync every</b>	Select the amount of time between synchronizations.
<b>Base distinguished name</b>	Base DN of the remote LDAP server that automatically populates when a remote LDAP server is selected above.
<b>LDAP filter</b>	Optionally, enter an LDAP filter. Select <b>Test Filter</b> to test that the filter functions as expected.
<b>Token-based authentication sync priorities</b>	Select the required authentication synchronization priorities. Drag the priorities up and down in the list change the priority order.
<b>Sync as</b>	Select to synchronize as a remote user or as a local user. Selecting either option will open a pop-up dialog box displaying the user fields that will be synchronized for that selection.
<b>Group to associate users with</b>	Optionally, select a group from the dropdown menu with which to associate the users with, or select <b>Create New</b> to create a new user group. See <a href="#">User groups on page 83</a> .
<b>Organization</b>	Optionally, select an organization from the dropdown menu with which to associate the users with, or select <b>Create New</b> to create a new organization. See <a href="#">Organizations on page 85</a> .
<b>Certificate binding CA</b>	Certificate binding CA for users who use remote user sync rules.  When the <b>Certificate binding common name</b> field is populated (under <b>LDAP User Mapping Attributes</b> ) this field must also be specified.
<b>Debugging Settings</b>	Optionally, log synchronization details, including LDAP query results. These log files can be downloaded under <b>Debug Report &gt; LDAP Sync</b> . In addition, select whether to delete synchronized users when they are no longer found on the remote server.
<b>LDAP User Mapping Attributes</b>	Optionally, edit the remote LDAP user mapping attributes.
<b>Preview Mapping</b>	Select to preview the LDAP user sync mappings in a new window.
<b>Show Sync Fields</b>	Select to view the user fields that will be synchronized.

3. Select **OK** to create the new synchronization rule.

## Guest users

Guest user accounts can be created as needed. Guest users are similar to local users, only they are created with a restricted set of attributes.

To manage guest user accounts, go to **Authentication > User Management > Guest Users**.

Users can be authenticated against local or remote user databases with single sign-on using client certificates or SSO (Kerberos/SAML).

Common use cases might include:

- Hotel receptionists creating room accounts
- Office staff creating visitor accounts

Newly created account information can be sent to users via email, SMS, or printed out individually.

### To create a new guest user/multiple guest users:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > Guest Users** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information:



The "Sponsor" role for local and remote users is equivalent to an administrator with Read-Write permissions to the **Guest Users** sub-menu only.

General	
<b>Creation Mode</b>	<p>There are three guest user creation methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Express:</b> Quickly create guest user accounts without the need to enter any user information. Guest accounts generated this way only have four attributes: <b>Sponsor</b>, <b>Username</b> (eight random lowercase letters—must be unique from any other existing user account), <b>Password</b>, and <b>Expiry</b>.</li> <li>• <b>From CSV file:</b> Create guest user accounts using information from a CSV file in the following format: <b>&lt;first name&gt;</b>, <b>&lt;last name&gt;</b>, <b>&lt;email&gt;</b>, <b>&lt;mobile&gt;</b>, <b>&lt;group&gt;</b>.</li> <li>• <b>Manual Input:</b> Create guest user accounts by manually entering the user attributes for each guest user.</li> </ul>
<b>Expiry date</b>	Set the date that the guest user account(s) will expire.
<b>Expiry time</b>	Set the time that the guest user account(s) will expire. The time can either be manually entered, or defined from four options: <b>Now</b> , <b>Midnight</b> , <b>6 a.m.</b> , or <b>Noon</b> .
<b>Express</b>	The following is only available when <b>Creation Mode</b> is set to <b>Express</b> .

<b>Number of new guest users</b>	Number of new guest users to be added, up to a maximum of 1000.
<b>Groups</b>	Choose user groups from the list available to assign the new guest users.
<b>CSV Import</b>	The following is only available when <b>Creation Mode</b> is set to <b>From CSV file</b> .
<b>CSV file</b>	Choose a CSV file to import the user attributes.
<b>Guest Basic Information</b>	The following is only available when <b>Creation Mode</b> is set to <b>Manual Input</b> .
<b>Add Guest User</b>	Manually enter guest user information, including their <b>First name</b> , <b>Last name</b> , <b>Email address</b> , <b>Mobile number</b> , <b>Groups</b> , and <b>Actions</b> . Choose user groups from the list available to assign the new guest users.

## User groups

Users can be assigned to groups during user account configuration (see [Editing a user on page 71](#)), or by editing the groups to add users to it.

To view the user groups list, go to **Authentication > User Management > User Groups**.



Note that user groups can be created for MAC devices. However, MAC devices will only be available to add in a MAC user group once devices have been created or imported. See [MAC Auth Bypass](#) for more information.

### To create a new user group:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > User Groups** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the group.
<b>Type</b>	Select the type of group: <b>Local</b> , <b>Remote LDAP</b> , <b>Remote RADIUS</b> , or <b>MAC</b> .
<b>Users</b>	Select from available users and move them to the <b>Selected users</b> box to add them to the group.  This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Local</b> .
<b>User retrieval</b>	Determine group membership by selecting either <b>Specify an LDAP filter</b> or <b>Set a list of imported remote LDAP users</b> .  This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Remote LDAP</b> .

<b>Remote LDAP</b>	<p>Select a remote LDAP server from the dropdown menu. At least one remote LDAP server must already be configured, see <a href="#">Remote authentication servers on page 1</a>.</p> <p>This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Remote LDAP</b>.</p>
<b>Remote RADIUS</b>	<p>Select a remote RADIUS server from the dropdown menu. At least one remote RADIUS server must already be configured, see <a href="#">Remote authentication servers on page 1</a>.</p> <p>This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Remote RADIUS</b>.</p>
<b>LDAP filter</b>	<p>Enter an <b>LDAP filter</b>. Optionally, select <b>Test filter</b> to ensure that the filter works as expected.</p> <p>This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Remote LDAP</b> and <b>User retrieval</b> is set to <b>Specify an LDAP filter</b>.</p>
<b>LDAP users</b>	<p>Select remote LDAP users from the <b>Available LDAP users</b> box and move them to the <b>Selected LDAP users</b> box to add them to the remote group.</p> <p>This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Remote LDAP</b> and <b>User retrieval</b> is set to <b>Set a list of imported remote users</b>.</p>
<b>RADIUS users</b>	<p>Select remote RADIUS users from the <b>Available RADIUS users</b> box and move them to the <b>Selected RADIUS users</b> box to add them to the remote group.</p> <p>This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>Remote RADIUS</b>.</p>
<b>MAC devices</b>	<p>Select from available MAC devices and move them to the <b>Selected MAC devices</b> box to add them to the group.</p> <p>This option is only available if <b>Type</b> is <b>MAC</b>.</p>

3. Select **OK** to create the new group.

#### To edit a user group:

1. In the user group list, select the group that you need to edit.
2. Edit the settings as required. The settings are the same as when creating a new group.
3. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

### User groups for MAC-based RADIUS authentication

Once created, MAC user groups can then be used under the MAC-based authentication section of RADIUS clients, under **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients**. See [Clients](#) for more information.

## Usage profile

Usage profiles can be created to determine user time and data usage on a granular level.

To view the usage profile list, go to **Authentication > User Management > Usage Profile**.

**To create a new usage profile:**

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > Usage Profile** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the profile.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter information about the usage profile.
<b>Time Usage</b>	Select how time usage is determined.
<b>Time limit</b>	<p>For this profile, the user's time limit will be either unlimited or measured from the moment their account was created, from when they first logged on, or how much time they have used.</p> <p>When the method has been chosen, enter the time period, in either <b>minutes</b>, <b>hours</b>, <b>days</b>, <b>weeks</b>, or <b>months</b>. The default is set to seven days.</p>
<b>Data Usage</b>	Select how data usage is determined.
<b>Data limit</b>	<p>For this profile, the user's data limit will either be unlimited or restricted to the amount of data they have used.</p> <p>If data usage is to be limited, enter the data amount in either <b>KB</b>, <b>MB</b>, <b>GB</b>, or <b>TB</b>. The default is set to 1 GB.</p>
<b>Time Schedule</b>	Select the timezone the usage profile should follow.
<b>Timezone</b>	Timezone the usage profile should follow. The default is set to (GMT) UTC - No Daylight Savings.

3. Select **OK** to add the new usage profile.

## Organizations

Organizations include a name and logo. An organization can be associated with local and remote users.

When a user provisions FortiToken Mobile on their device, the organization name and logo are automatically pushed to the device, allowing the FortiToken Mobile App's user interface to be rebranded.

Organizations can be created, edited, and deleted as needed. Organizations are applied to users from the various user management pages. See [Local users on page 69](#), [Remote users on page 77](#), and [Remote user sync rules on page 80](#) for more information.

To manage organizations, go to **Authentication > User Management > Organizations**.

**To create a new organization:**

1. From the organization list, select **Create New**.
2. Enter a **Name** for the organization.
3. Optionally, upload a logo file for the organization on your computer. The image can be a maximum of 320x320 pixels, and must be 24-bit PNG file.
4. Select **OK** to create the new organization.

## Realms

Realms allow multiple domains to authenticate to a single FortiAuthenticator unit. Both LDAP and RADIUS remote servers are supported. Each RADIUS realm is associated with a name, such as a domain or company name, that is used during the login process to indicate the remote (or local) authentication server on which the user resides.

For example, the username of the user **PJFry**, belonging to the company **P\_Express**, would become any of the following, depending on the selected format:

- **PJFry@P\_Express**
- **P\_Express\PJFry**
- **P\_Express/PJFry**

The FortiAuthenticator uses the specified realm to identify the back-end RADIUS or LDAP authentication server (s) used to authenticate the user.

Acceptable realms can be configured on a per RADIUS server client basis. See [User management on page 68](#) for more information.

To manage realms, go to **Authentication > User Management > Realms**. The following options are available:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new realm.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected realm or realms.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected realm.
<b>Name</b>	The names of the realms.
<b>User Source</b>	The source of the users in the realms.
<b>Chained token authentication with remote RADIUS server</b>	Available when <b>User source</b> is set to an LDAP server. Enable from the dropdown menu to chain token authentication with a RADIUS server.

**To create a new realm:**

1. From the realms list, select **Create New**.
2. Enter a **Name** for the realm.



The realm name may only contain letters, numbers, periods, hyphens, and underscores. It cannot start or end with a special character.

3. Select the **User source** for the realm from the dropdown menu. The options include **Local users**, or from specific RADIUS or LDAP servers.
4. Enable **Chained token authentication with remote RADIUS server**. Note that this option is only available when selecting a remote LDAP server as the **User source**.



FortiAuthenticator 4.3+ supports chained authentication, providing the ability to chain two different authentication methods together so that, for example, a two-factor authentication RSA solution can validate passcodes via RADIUS.

5. Select **OK** to create the new realm.

## FortiTokens

Go to **Authentication > User Management > FortiTokens** to view a list of configured FortiTokens. From here, FortiTokens can be added, imported, exported, edited, deleted, and activated.

See [FortiToken devices and mobile apps on page 1](#) for more detailed information.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Create a new FortiToken.
<b>Import</b>	Import a list of FortiTokens from a serial number CSV file, a seed CSV file, or from a FortiGate configuration.
<b>Export FTK Hardware</b>	Export the FortiToken list.
<b>Refresh FTM</b>	Refresh the <b>Status</b> of a FortiToken Mobile token.
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected FortiToken(s).
<b>Edit</b>	Edit the selected FortiToken.
<b>Activate</b>	Activate the selected FortiToken(s).
<b>Search</b>	Search the FortiToken list.
<b>Serial number</b>	The FortiToken's serial number.
<b>Token type</b>	The FortiToken type, either <b>FortiToken Hardware</b> or <b>FortiToken Mobile</b> .
<b>Status</b>	Whether or not the FortiToken is activated.
<b>Comment</b>	Comments about the token.
<b>User</b>	The user to whom the FortiToken applies.
<b>Algorithm</b>	The FortiToken's encryption.
<b>Size</b>	The size of the token.
<b>Drift/Counter</b>	The time difference between the FortiAuthenticator and the FortiToken.

<b>Timestep</b>	The FortiToken timestep.
<b>FTM license</b>	The FortiToken Mobile license applied to the FortiToken.
<b>Platform</b>	The FortiToken's platform.

## MAC devices

Non-802.1X compliant devices can be identified and accepted onto the network using MAC address authentication. See [Non-compliant devices on page 135](#) for more information.

Go to **Authentication > User Management > MAC Devices** to view a list of configured MAC devices. From here, MAC devices can be created, imported, edited, and deleted.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Create a new MAC-based authentication devices.
<b>Import</b>	Import a list of MAC devices from a CSV file.

Once created/imported, MAC devices can be added to MAC user groups. See [User groups](#) for more information.

## Device tracking

When enabled, this feature allows end users to self-register their devices, and to have those devices tracked, based on the device MAC address.

An unregistered device is granted restricted network access, and is redirected to the FortiAuthenticator guest portal. The user enters valid credentials, then the FortiAuthenticator detects the unregistered device and offers the user an option to register it. If the user registers the device, it becomes part of their authorized device group and the user is granted network access on that device (if the user does not register the device, they are redirected to the guest portal login page).

To link a device **to** a user configuration, create a new MAC-based authentication device entry under **Authentication > User Management > MAC Devices**, and enable **This device belongs to a user**. Similarly, it is possible to link a device *from* a user configuration. In either case, names and MAC addresses must be unique.

<b>Name:</b>	<input type="text" value="printer.fortiad.net"/>
<b>MAC address:</b>	<input type="text" value="00:22:68:1a:f1:a0"/>
<b>Description:</b>	<div></div>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This device belongs to a user	
<b>User Type:</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Local <input type="radio"/> Remote LDAP <input type="radio"/> Remote RADIUS
<b>Owner:</b>	<input type="text" value="jpotts"/>



To fully benefit from this feature, you must use a FortiAuthenticator in conjunction with a FortiGate running FortiOS 6.0+.

## RADIUS attributes

Some services can receive information about an authenticated user through RADIUS vendor-specific attributes. FortiAuthenticator user groups and user accounts can include RADIUS attributes for Fortinet and other vendors.

Attributes in user accounts can specify user-related information. For example, the **Default** attribute **Framed-IP-Address** specifies the VPN tunnel IP address to be sent to the user by the Fortinet SSL VPN.

Attributes in user groups can specify more general information, applicable to the whole group. For example, specifying third-party vendor attributes to a switch could enable administrative level login to all members of the **Network\_Admins** group, or authorize the user to the correct privilege level on the system.

**To add RADIUS attributes to a user or group:**

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > Local Users** and select a user account to edit, or go to **Authentication > User Management > User Groups** and select a group to edit.
2. In the **RADIUS Attributes** section, select **Add Attribute**. The **Create New User Group RADIUS Attribute** or **Create New User RADIUS Attribute** window opens.
3. Select the appropriate **Vendor** and **Attribute ID**, then enter the attribute's value in the **Value** field.
4. Select **OK** to add the new attribute to the user or group.
5. Repeat the above steps to add additional attributes as needed.

## FortiToken physical device and FortiToken Mobile

A FortiToken device is a disconnected one-time password (OTP) generator. It is a small physical device with a button that when pressed displays a six digit token passcode. FortiToken Mobile is an application for mobile devices that performs the same one-time password function as a FortiToken device.

Each FortiAuthenticator unit or VM is supplied with two trial FortiToken Mobile tokens. To obtain the free FortiToken Mobile tokens (if they have not been created dynamically on install), select **Get FortiToken Mobile trial tokens** when adding a FortiToken Mobile token. This may be required if, for example, you are upgrading an unlicensed FortiAuthenticator unit to a licensed one, as the old tokens associated with the unlicensed serial number will not be compatible with the new, licensed serial number. The tokens will still work, but they are not able to be reassigned to a new user. In this case, you must delete the old tokens, and then generate new ones.

Time-based token passcodes require that FortiAuthenticator clock is accurate. If possible, configure the system time to be synchronized with an NTP server.

To perform token-based authentication, the user must enter the token passcode. If the user's username and password are also required, this is called two-factor authentication. The displayed code changes every 60 seconds.



FortiAuthenticator supports FortiToken OTP push notifications, or FTMv4 push notifications. Using FTMv4, when required to authenticate themselves, FortiToken Mobile users don't have to look-up a code in FortiToken and enter the code into their browser. Instead FortiToken Mobile is queried and the user just responds to accept the connection and the session is authenticated.

## FortiAuthenticator and FortiTokens

With FortiOS, FortiToken identifiers must be entered into the FortiGate unit, which then contacts FortiGuard servers to verify the information before activating them.

FortiAuthenticator on the other hand acts as a repository for all FortiToken devices used on your network. It is a single point of registration and synchronization for easier installation and maintenance.



To register FortiTokens, you must have a valid FortiGuard connection, otherwise any FortiTokens you enter will have an **Inactive** status. After the FortiTokens are registered, the connection to FortiGuard is no longer essential.

If a token authentication fails, check that the system time on FortiAuthenticator is correct and re-synchronize the FortiToken.

### To add FortiTokens manually:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > FortiTokens** and select **Create New**.
2. Select the **Token type**, either **FortiToken Hardware** or **FortiToken Mobile**.
3. If **FortiToken Hardware** is selected, enter one or more token serial numbers in the **Serial numbers** field.  
You can also import multiple tokens by selecting **Import Multiple**, or by selecting **Add all FortiTokens from the same Purchase Order** and entering a single token's serial number; all tokens associated with that purchase order will then be imported.
4. If **FortiToken Mobile**, enter the **Activation codes** in the field provided, or select **Get FortiToken Mobile free trial tokens** to use temporary tokens.
5. Select **OK** to add the FortiToken(s).

### To import FortiTokens from a CSV file:

1. From the FortiToken list, select **Import**.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Select **Serial number file** to load a CSV file that contains token serial numbers. FortiToken devices have a serial number barcode on them used to create the import file.
  - Select **Seed file** to load a CSV file that contains the token serial numbers, encrypted seeds, and IV values.
3. Select **Choose File**, find the configuration file, and select **Open**.
4. Select **OK** to import the FortiTokens.

### To import FortiTokens from a FortiGate unit:

1. Export the FortiGate unit configuration to a file.
2. From the FortiToken list, select **Import**.
3. Select **FortiGate configuration file**.
4. For **Data to import**, select either **Import FortiToken Hardware only**, **Import FortiToken Hardware and only their associated users**, or **Import all FortiToken Hardware and users**.
5. Select **Choose File**, find the configuration file, and select **Open**.
6. If the file is encrypted, enter the **Password** in the field provided.
7. Select **OK** to import the FortiTokens.

**To export FortiTokens:**

1. From the FortiToken list, select **Export FTK Hardware**.
2. Save the file to your computer.

## Monitoring FortiTokens

To monitor the total number of FortiToken devices registered on FortiAuthenticator, as well as the number of disabled FortiTokens, go to **System > Dashboard > Status** and view the **User Inventory** widget.

You can also view the list of FortiTokens, their status, token clock drift, and which user they are assigned to from the FortiToken list found at **Authentication > User Management > FortiTokens**.

## FortiToken device maintenance

Go to **Authentication > User Management > FortiTokens**, then select the FortiToken you need to perform maintenance and select **Edit**. The following actions can be performed:

- Comments can be added for FortiToken.
- The device can be locked if it has been reported lost or stolen.

A reason for locking the device must be entered, and a temporary SMS token can be provided.

- The device can be unlocked if it is recovered.
- The device can be synchronized.

Synchronize the FortiAuthenticator and the FortiToken device when the device clock has drifted. This ensures that the device provides the token code that FortiAuthenticator expects, as the codes are time-based. Fortinet recommends synchronizing all new FortiTokens.

- The device history can be viewed, showing all commands applied to this FortiToken.

## FortiToken drift adjustment

When FortiAuthenticator and FortiTokens have been initialized prior to setting an NTP server, the time difference can be too large to correct with the synchronize function, forcing all tokens to resynchronize. To avoid this, selected tokens can be manually drift shifted.



The following procedure is intended to be used only in special cases where some FortiTokens are severely out-of-sync, for example, when a token is switched from manual configuration to NTP control. Under normal circumstances, this is not required.

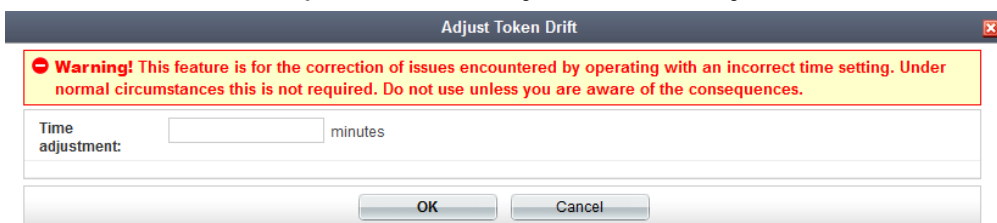
Only activated FortiTokens can be adjusted.

**To perform time drift adjustment on a FortiToken:**

1. In a browser, go to:

`https://<FortiAuthenticator-IP-Address>/admin/fac_auth/fortitokendrft/`

2. Select the FortiToken to adjust, then select **Adjust Drift**. The **Adjust Token Drift** window opens.



The dialog box titled "Adjust Token Drift" contains a warning message: "Warning! This feature is for the correction of issues encountered by operating with an incorrect time setting. Under normal circumstances this is not required. Do not use unless you are aware of the consequences." Below the warning is a text input field labeled "Time adjustment:" followed by a "minutes" label. At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

3. Enter the required **Time adjustment** in minutes.  
Make sure to include a minus sign (-) for a negative value, but *don't* use a plus sign (+) for a positive value.
4. Select **OK** to adjust the token drift.

## Self-service portal

Configure general self-service portal options, including access control settings, self-registration options, replacement messages, and device self-enrollment settings.

### General

To configure general self-service portal settings, go to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > General**.

The following settings can be configured:

<b>Default portal language</b>	Select from several default portal language packs from the dropdown menu.
<b>Add a Language Pack</b>	Upload a different language pack. Obtain additional translation packs from the <a href="#">Fortinet Support</a> website if you need to translate to your local language.
<b>Site name</b>	Enter a name that is used when referring to this site. If left blank, the default name will be the site DNS domain name or IP address.
<b>Email signature</b>	Add a signature to be appended to the end of outgoing email messages.
<b>Allow users to change their password</b>	Enable to allow local and/or remote users the ability to change their own password.

### Access control

To configure self-service portal access settings, go to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Access Control**.

The following settings can be configured:

<b>Username input format</b>	Select from the following username input formats: <b>username@realm</b> , <b>realm\username</b> , <b>realm/username</b> . The realm name is optional when authenticating against the default realm.
<b>Realms</b>	<p>Add realms to which the user will be associated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a realm from the dropdown menu in the <b>Realm</b> column.</li> <li>• Select whether or not to allow local users to override remote users for the selected realm.</li> <li>• Edit the group filter to filter users based on the groups they belong to.</li> <li>• If necessary, add more realms to the list.</li> <li>• Select the default realm for this client.</li> </ul>

## Self-registration

When self-registration is enabled, users can request registration through the FortiAuthenticator login page. Self-registration can be configured so that a user request is emailed to the device administrator for approval.

When the account is ready for use, the user receives an email or SMS message with their account information.

### To enable self-registration:

1. Go to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Self-registration**.

**Edit Self-registration Settings**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require administrator approval
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable email to freeform addresses
<input type="checkbox"/> Select User Groups allowed to approve new user registrations
<input type="checkbox"/> Account expires after <input type="text" value="1"/> hour(s) ▼
<input type="checkbox"/> Use mobile number as username
<input type="checkbox"/> Place registered users into a group <input td="" type="text" value="[ Please Select ]" ▼<=""/>
Password creation: <input checked="" type="radio"/> User-defined <input type="radio"/> Randomly generated
Send account information via: <input checked="" type="radio"/> SMS <input type="radio"/> Email
SMS gateway: <input type="text" value="Use default"/> ▼
<b>Required Field Configuration</b>
<input type="button" value="OK"/>

2. Select **Enable** to enable self-registration.
3. Optionally, configure the following settings:

<b>Require administrator approval</b>	Select to require that an administrator approves the user.
---------------------------------------	--

<b>Enable email to freeform addresses</b>	Select to send self-registration requests to the email addresses entered in the <b>Administrator email addresses</b> field.
<b>Select User Groups allowed to approve new user registrations</b>	<p>Select to send self-registration requests to specific user groups. Select the required approvers from the <b>Available groups</b> box and move them to the <b>Chosen groups</b> box.</p> <p>If enabled, the guests are given a dropdown list of approvers to choose from on the self-registration page. The FortiAuthenticator sends an approval request to that approver's email address. The list of approvers is the union of all the users/administrators who are members of the specified groups. Local, remote LDAP, and remote RADIUS groups are supported.</p>
<b>Account expires after</b>	Enable to specify an expiration for self-generated accounts after they are generated.
<b>Use mobile number as username</b>	If enabled, after a successful registration, the user's password will be sent to them via SMS to confirm their identity.
<b>Place registered users into a group</b>	Select a group into which self-registered users will be placed from the dropdown menu.
<b>Password creation</b>	Select how a password is created, either <b>User-defined</b> or <b>Randomly generated</b> .
<b>Send account information via</b>	<p>Choose how to send account information to the user, either <b>SMS</b>, <b>Email</b>, or <b>Display on browser page</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Display on browser page</b> option is only available if administrator approval is not required.</p>
<b>SMS gateway</b>	Select an SMS gateway from the dropdown menu. See <a href="#">SMS gateways on page 1</a> for more information.
<b>Required Field Configuration</b>	<p>Select the fields that the user is required to populate when self-registering. Options include: <b>First name</b>, <b>Last name</b>, <b>Email</b>, <b>address</b>, <b>Address</b>, <b>City</b>, <b>State/Province</b>, <b>Country</b>, <b>Phone number</b>, <b>Mobile number</b>, <b>Custom field 1</b>, <b>Custom field 2</b>, and <b>Custom field 3</b>.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Custom user fields on page 1</a> for more information.</p>

4. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

## Self-registration approval

The self-registration page is a customizable replacement message. The default replacement message contains a new optional field for the self-registering guest to select an approver. The list of approvers comes from the groups specified in the configuration. The dropdown list is populated with the explicit list of group members for local groups, remote RADIUS groups, and remote LDAP groups.

Each approver in the dropdown list is designated as "Lastname, Firstname". In cases where first and last name are not available, an approver is designated as "username" instead. Disabled user accounts are excluded from the list. User accounts without a configured email address are also excluded from the list.

**To approve a self-registration request:**

1. Select the link in the **Approval Required for...** email message to open the **New User Approval** page in your web browser.
2. Review the information and select either **Approve** or **Deny**, as appropriate.

Approval is required only if **Require administrator approval** is enabled in the self-registration settings.

If the request is approved, FortiAuthenticator sends the user an email or SMS message stating that the account has been activated.

**How a user requests registration**

A user can request registration, or self-register, from the FortiAuthenticator login screen.

**To request registration:**

1. Browse to the IP address of FortiAuthenticator.  
Security policies must be in place on the FortiGate unit to allow these sessions to be established.
2. Select **Register** to open the user registration page.
3. Fill in all the required fields and, optionally, fill in the **Additional Information** fields.
4. Select **OK** to request registration.  
If administrator approval is not required and **Display on browser page** is enabled, the account details are immediately displayed to the user.

**Token self-provisioning**

User token self-provisioning allows users to set up their own FortiTokens without direct intervention of an administrator.

To configure token self-provisioning settings, go to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Token self-provisioning**.

The following settings can be configured:

Token Self-registration	
<b>Allow FortiToken Hardware self-provisioning</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to self-provision their own FortiToken Hardware tokens.
<b>Allow FortiToken Mobile self-provisioning</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow mobile users to self-provision their FortiToken Mobile.
<b>Allow Email self-provisioning</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to self-provision their FortiToken Mobile via email.
<b>Allow SMS self-provisioning</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to self-provision their FortiToken Mobile via SMS.

### Token Self-registration

<b>Allow user to request a token from Administrator at this email address</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to request a new token using an email address.
<b>Restrict token self-provisioning to members of specific groups</b>	Enable this option if you want to restrict token self provisioning only to members of selected user groups.

### Token Self-revocation

<b>Allow users to report a lost token to the Administrator at this email address</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to report a lost token to a specific email address.
<b>Allow users to temporarily use SMS token authentication if a mobile number was pre-configured</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to switch to temporary SMS based authentication. The administrator will also be notified.
<b>Allow users to temporarily use email token authentication if an email was pre-configured</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow users to switch to temporary email based authentication. The administrator will also be notified.
<b>Allow users to re-provision their FortiToken Mobile</b>	Enable this option if you want to allow mobile users to re-provision their token.

## How a user registers a token

If enabled, a user can self-register a token from the user portal screen.

### To self-register:

1. Browse to the IP address of the user portal and log in.
2. Go to **My Account > User > Register Token** to open the token registration options.
3. Fill in all the required fields.  
Only options that the administrator has configured under the Token Self-registration options will be available.
4. Select **OK** to register token.  
If a token is already assigned to the user, the token registration page will display the token along with its serial number.

## How a user reports a lost token

A user can report a lost token (mobile or physical) from the user portal screen.



**To report lost token:**

1. Browse to the IP address of the user portal.
2. Select **I lost my token**.

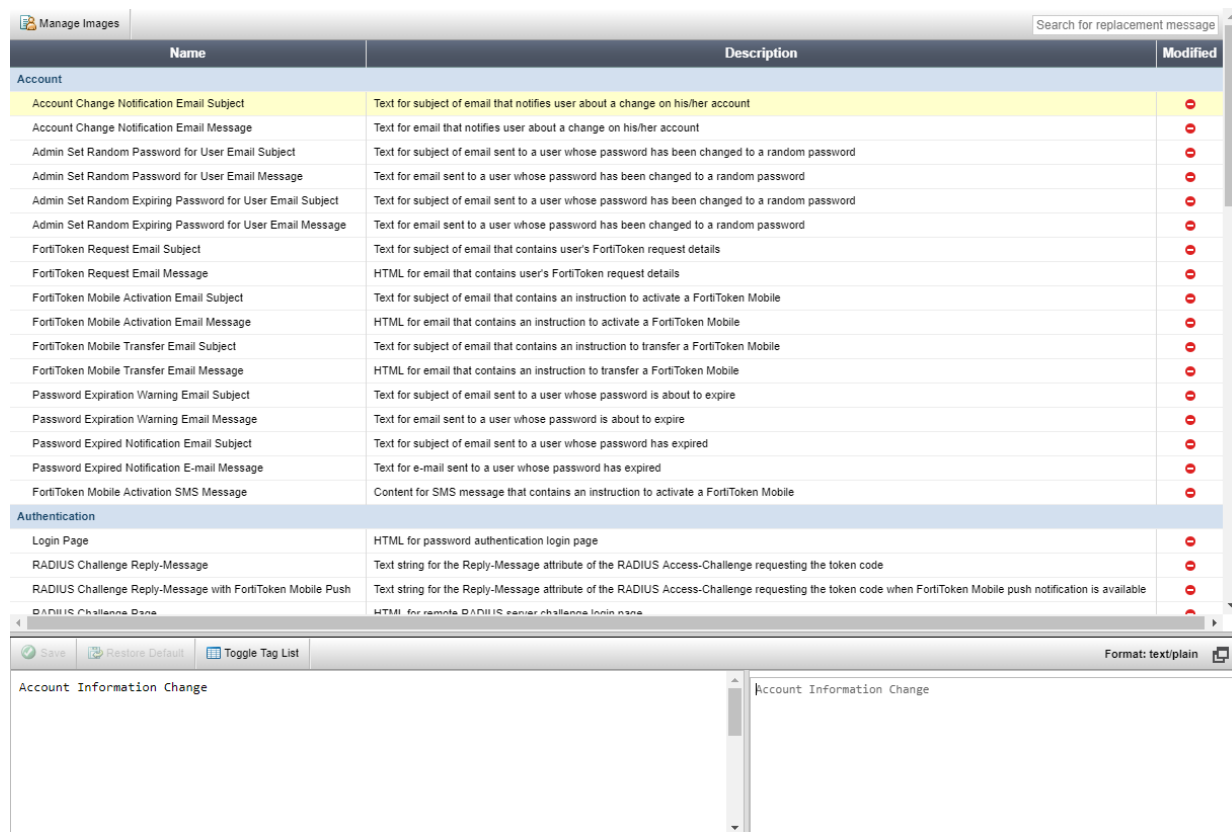
The user will be directed to a page warning them that their account will be locked and the administrator will be notified. Select **OK** to continue.

3. Select the preferred option.  
Only options that the administrator has configured under the Token Self-revocation options will be available.
4. Select **OK** to continue.

## Replacement messages

The replacement messages list allows you to view and customize replacement messages, and manage images.

Go to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Replacement Messages** to view the replacement message list.



Name	Description	Modified
<b>Account</b>		
Account Change Notification Email Subject	Text for subject of email that notifies user about a change on his/her account	⊖
Account Change Notification Email Message	Text for email that notifies user about a change on his/her account	⊖
Admin Set Random Password for User Email Subject	Text for subject of email sent to a user whose password has been changed to a random password	⊖
Admin Set Random Password for User Email Message	Text for email sent to a user whose password has been changed to a random password	⊖
Admin Set Random Expiring Password for User Email Subject	Text for subject of email sent to a user whose password has been changed to a random password	⊖
Admin Set Random Expiring Password for User Email Message	Text for email sent to a user whose password has been changed to a random password	⊖
FortiToken Request Email Subject	Text for subject of email that contains user's FortiToken request details	⊖
FortiToken Request Email Message	HTML for email that contains user's FortiToken request details	⊖
FortiToken Mobile Activation Email Subject	Text for subject of email that contains an instruction to activate a FortiToken Mobile	⊖
FortiToken Mobile Activation Email Message	HTML for email that contains an instruction to activate a FortiToken Mobile	⊖
FortiToken Mobile Transfer Email Subject	Text for subject of email that contains an instruction to transfer a FortiToken Mobile	⊖
FortiToken Mobile Transfer Email Message	HTML for email that contains an instruction to transfer a FortiToken Mobile	⊖
Password Expiration Warning Email Subject	Text for subject of email sent to a user whose password is about to expire	⊖
Password Expiration Warning Email Message	Text for email sent to a user whose password is about to expire	⊖
Password Expired Notification Email Subject	Text for subject of email sent to a user whose password has expired	⊖
Password Expired Notification E-mail Message	Text for e-mail sent to a user whose password has expired	⊖
FortiToken Mobile Activation SMS Message	Content for SMS message that contains an instruction to activate a FortiToken Mobile	⊖
<b>Authentication</b>		
Login Page	HTML for password authentication login page	⊖
RADIUS Challenge Reply-Message	Text string for the Reply-Message attribute of the RADIUS Access-Challenge requesting the token code	⊖
RADIUS Challenge Reply-Message with FortiToken Mobile Push	Text string for the Reply-Message attribute of the RADIUS Access-Challenge requesting the token code when FortiToken Mobile push notification is available	⊖
RADIUS Challenge Done	HTML for remote RADIUS server challenge login page	⊖

Manage Images

Search for replacement message

Save Restore Default Toggle Tag List Format: text/plain

Account Information Change

Account Information Change

The replacement messages are split into seven categories: **Account**, **Authentication**, **Device Certificate Enrollment**, **Password Reset**, **User Registration**, **SAML IdP**, and **SAML SP (FSSO)**.



The two pre-authentication replacement messages under **Authentication** are only available once pre-authentication has been enabled under **System > Administration > System Access**.

Selecting a specific message will display the text and HTML or plain text of the message in the lower half of the content pane.

Selecting **Toggle Tag List** will display a table of the tags used for that message atop the message's HTML or plain text box.

#### To edit a replacement message:

1. Select a message in the replacement message list.
2. Edit the plain text or HTML code in the lower right pane, or select the **Open in new window** icon to edit the message in a new browser window.
3. Select **Save** to save your changes.
4. Select **Restore Default** to restore the message to its default value if you made an error while editing the message.

### Manage images

Images can be managed by selecting **Manage Images** in the **Replacement Messages** window. Images can also be added, edited, and deleted.

#### To add an image:

1. In the **Manage Images** screen, select **Create New**.
2. Enter a name for the image in the **Name** field.
3. Select **Choose File**, find the GIF, JPEG, or PNG image file that you are adding, and select **Open**.  
The maximum image size is 65kB.
4. Select **OK** to add the image.

#### To edit an image:

In the manage images screen, select an image and select **Edit**.

1. In the **Edit Image** window, edit the image name and file as required.
2. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

#### To delete an image:

1. In the **Manage Images** screen, select an image and select **Delete**.
2. Select **Yes, I'm sure** in the confirmation window to delete the image.

## Device self-enrollment

Device certificate self-enrollment is a method for local and remote users to obtain certificates for their devices. It can be used to enable EAP-TLS for BYOD configurations, or for VPN authentication. For example:

- A user brings their tablet to a BYOD organization.
- They log in to FortiAuthenticator and create a certificate for the device.
- With their certificate, username, and password they can authenticate to gain access to the wireless network.
- Without the certificate, they are unable to access the network.



EAP-TLS is a bidirectional certificate authentication method; the client and the FortiAuthenticator EAP need to have matching certificates from the same CA.

To enable device self-enrollment and adjust self-enrollment settings, go to **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Device Self-enrollment** and select **Enable user device certificate self-enrollment**.



SCEP must be enabled to activate this feature, see [SCEP on page 1](#).

Edit Device Self-enrollment Settings	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable user device certificate self-enrollment
SCEP enrollment template:	[ Please Select ]
Max. devices:	1
Key size:	2048 Bits
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable self-enrollment for Smart Card certificate
OK	

The following settings can be configured:

<b>SCEP enrollment template</b>	Select a SCEP enrollment template from the dropdown menu. SCEP can be configured in <b>Certificate Management &gt; SCEP</b> .
<b>Maximum devices</b>	Set the maximum number of devices that a user can self-enroll.
<b>Key size</b>	Select the key size for self-enrolled certificates (1024, 2048, or 4096 bits). Note that iOS devices only support 1024 and 2048.
<b>Enable self-enrollment for Smart Card certificate</b>	Select to enable self-enrollment for smart card certificates. This requires that a <b>Device FQDN</b> be configured (in the <b>System Information</b> widget under <b>System &gt; Dashboard &gt; Status</b> ), as it is used in the CRL Distribution Points (CDPs) certificate extension.

Select **OK** to apply any changes you have made.

## Guest portals

The following section describes how to configure custom guest portals on a per customer or per AP/controller basis.

The portals are assigned RADIUS clients and profiles, can permit certain pre-login and post-login services for users (such as password reset and token registration abilities), and rules and replacement messages can be configured.

## Portals

Guest portal configuration is available under **Authentication > Guest Portals > Portals**.

### To configure a guest portal:

1. Select **Create New** to configure settings for a new guest portal.

**Create New Guest Portal**

Name:

URL:

Description:

MAC device HTTP parameter:

[ Please Select ] ▼

**Profile Configuration**

	RADIUS Client	Profile	Social/Device-only Group	Delete
1	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">[ Please Select ] ▼</div>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">[ Please Select ] ▼</div>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">[ No Group ] ▼</div>	✕

[Add another](#)

**General**

SMS gateway:

Use default ▼

**Authentication**

Authentication type:

☒ User credentials
 ☐ Device only(MAC address)

☒ Account login

☒ Social login

☐ Social account expires after

hour(s) ▼

☐ Facebook

☐ Google

☐ Twitter

☐ Linkedin

☐ Phone number

☐ Email

Pre-login Services			
<input type="checkbox"/> Disclaimer			
<input type="checkbox"/> Password Reset			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Account Registration			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require administrator approval			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable email to freeform addresses			
<input type="checkbox"/> Select User Groups allowed to approve new user registrations			
<input type="checkbox"/> Account expires after		<input type="text" value=""/>	hour(s) ▼
<input type="checkbox"/> Use mobile number as username			
<input type="checkbox"/> Place registered users into a group		[ Please Select ] ▼	
Password creation:		<input checked="" type="radio"/> User-defined <input type="radio"/> Randomly generated	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enforce contact verification:		<input type="radio"/> Email address <input type="radio"/> Mobile number <input type="radio"/> User's choice (email or mobile)	
Account delivery options available to the user:		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SMS <input type="checkbox"/> Email <input type="checkbox"/> Display on browser page	
Required field configuration:			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> First name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Last name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Email address	<input type="checkbox"/> Address
<input type="checkbox"/> City	<input type="checkbox"/> State/Province	<input type="checkbox"/> Country	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone number
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mobile number	<input type="checkbox"/> Custom field 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Custom field 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Custom field 3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Token Revocation			
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to report a lost token to the Administrator at this email address			
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to temporarily use SMS token authentication if a mobile number was pre-configured			
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to temporarily use email token authentication if an email was pre-configured			
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to re-provision their FortiToken Mobile			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Usage Extension Notifications			
Email:		<input type="text" value=""/>	
Post-login Services			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Profile			
<input type="checkbox"/> View			
<input type="checkbox"/> Edit			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Password Change			
<input type="checkbox"/> Local user			
<input type="checkbox"/> Remote user			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Token Registration			
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow FortiToken Hardware self-provisioning			
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow FortiToken Mobile self-provisioning			

## 2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	A name to identify the guest portal.
<b>URL</b>	The URL of the guest portal, in the format of:  <code>https://&lt;FortiAuthenticator IP/FQDN&gt;/guests</code>
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter information about the guest portal.
<b>MAC device HTTP parameter</b>	<p>Select one of the HTTP parameters available to use for this guest portal:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>usermac</b></li> <li>• <b>apmac</b></li> <li>• <b>apip</b></li> <li>• <b>userip</b></li> <li>• <b>ssid</b></li> <li>• <b>apname</b></li> <li>• <b>bssid</b></li> <li>• <b>server_ip</b></li> <li>• <b>station_mac</b></li> <li>• <b>station_ip</b></li> <li>• <b>apid</b></li> <li>• <b>ap_nodeid</b></li> <li>• <b>ap_location</b></li> <li>• <b>ap_floor</b></li> <li>• <b>ap_building</b></li> <li>• <b>ap_mac</b></li> <li>• <b>grant_url</b></li> </ul> <p>This field must be configured if this portal's <b>Authentication type</b> is set to <b>Device only (MAC address)</b>.</p>
<b>Profile Configuration</b>	Assign one or more RADIUS clients and profiles to the portal.
<b>General</b>	Assign an SMS gateway for self-registered users.

<b>Authentication</b>	<p>Select either <b>User credentials</b> or <b>Device only (MAC address)</b> as the authentication type:</p> <p><b>User credentials:</b> Selected by default, this option requires either local or remote user account credentials, or with social site credentials:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account login:</b> Authentication with local or remote user account credentials.</li> <li>• <b>Social login:</b> Authentication with social site credentials (OAUTH), phone number or email. If RADIUS client is a FortiWLC controller, appropriate firewall pinholes should be added under <b>Authentication &gt; Guest Portals &gt; General &gt; FortiWLC Wireless Controller</b>. Once enabled, you can optionally determine whether the social account expires after a certain amount of time (measure in minutes, hours, days, weeks, or months). In addition, various social login platforms become available within which you can enter their respective <b>Key</b> and <b>Secret</b>, including FortiAuthenticatorbook, Google, Twitter, LinkedIn, or with phone number or email address. Once a social login has been successfully completed on the guest portal via OAUTH, email, or SMS, a social login user account is created under <b>Authentication &gt; User Management &gt; Social Login Users</b>.</li> </ul> <p><b>Device only (MAC address):</b> When this option is enabled, the "MAC device HTTP parameter" must also be configured. When using device only authentication, the endpoint will not be presented with the login page. Instead, the FortiAuthenticator will only use the endpoint device's MAC address for authentication purposes. If the RADIUS client profile associated has <b>MAC device filtering</b> enabled, the MAC address is authenticated according to those settings. If <b>MAC device filtering</b> is disabled, any MAC address is accepted. Optionally, you can determine whether the device account expires after a certain amount of time. To configure, enable the checkbox, enter a value, and select either <b>minute(s)</b>, <b>hour(s)</b>, <b>day(s)</b>, <b>week(s)</b>, or <b>month(s)</b>.</p>
<b>Pre-login Services</b>	Configure various pre-login services to permit to users.
<b>Disclaimer</b>	<p>Enable or disable the appearance of a disclaimer to the end-user that must be accepted before proceeding to the login page.</p> <p>To configure the disclaimer, edit the <b>Login Disclaimer Page</b> replacement message under <b>Authentication &gt; Guest Portals &gt; Replacement Messages</b>.</p>
<b>Password Reset</b>	Enable or disable pre-login password reset link.

<b>Account Registration</b>	<p>Select to configure various user account registration options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Require administrator approval:</b> Enable/disable whether the user requires administrator approval. If enabled, select whether to send admin approval emails to freeform addresses or to selected user groups.</li> <li>• <b>Account expires after:</b> Enable/disable account expiration. If enabled, enter the number of hours, days, months, or years the account remains expired from the dropdown menu.</li> <li>• <b>Use mobile number as username:</b> Determine whether to require the user's mobile number as their username.</li> <li>• <b>Place registered users into a group:</b> Determine whether to place registered users into a group from the dropdown menu.</li> <li>• <b>Password creation:</b> Determine whether the user's password is user-defined or randomly generated.</li> <li>• <b>Enforce contact verification:</b> Enable/disable whether to enforce contact verification. If enabled, select whether to verify the user's email address or mobile number, or allow the user to decide between email address or mobile number.</li> <li>• <b>Account delivery options available to the user:</b> Determine whether the user's account information is sent to them by SMS, email, or displayed on the browser page. If more than one option is selected, the self-registering user decides which account delivery method to use. If Require administrator approval is enabled, Display on browser page is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Required field configuration:</b> Configure the available fields required by the user to enter (<b>First name</b>, <b>Last name</b>, <b>Email address</b>, and <b>Mobile number</b> are enabled by default).</li> </ul>
<b>Token Revocation</b>	<p>Select to revoke tokens based on various conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow users to report a lost token to the Administrator at this email address</b></li> <li>• <b>Allow users to temporarily use SMS token authentication if a mobile number was pre-configured</b></li> <li>• <b>Allow users to temporarily use email token authentication if an email was pre-configured</b></li> <li>• <b>Allow users to re-provision their FortiToken Mobile</b></li> </ul>
<b>Usage Extension Notifications</b>	<p>Allow users who exceeded their time and/or data usage to request an extension via an email notification.</p>
<b>Post-login Services</b>	<p>Configure various post-login services to permit to users.</p>
<b>Profile</b>	<p>Select to determine whether authenticated users can view/edit their account information.</p>
<b>Password Change</b>	<p>Select to determine whether local and/or remote users have the ability to change their passwords once logged in.</p>



<b>Token Registration</b>	Select to configure FortiToken Mobile self-provisioning privileges.
<b>Smart Connect</b>	Select to assign a Smart Connect profile. See <a href="#">Smart Connect Profiles</a> for more information.
<b>Device Tracking and Management</b>	Select to require users to register their devices once logged in.

3. Select **OK** to add the new guest portal.

### Token self-revocation

**Token self-provisioning** is offered as a pre-login service for guest portals.

When the token self-revocation feature is enabled (**Authentication > Self-service Portal > Token self-provisioning**), the guest portal's token verification page will have an additional **Lost my token** link. Clicking this link provides access to the token self-revocation service page that includes the following options:

- **Re-provision my FortiToken Mobile**
- **Switch to email token authentication**
- **Disable my account**

### Post-login device tracking

When the post-login service option **Device Tracking and Management** is enabled, the administrator must specify into which device group to put the self-registered devices, as well as specify the **Maximum number of devices per user** (up to 20; 3 by default). When enabled, users have access to a post-login interface where they can add/edit/delete their list of devices. If enabled but the device is **not** registered, the FortiAuthenticator presents a device registration page after account credential validation.

If the user reaches their device limit, they must select an existing device to replace. If the MAC address is currently associated with a different user, it will be re-assigned to this newly logged-in user with the following warning message:

"Your device had previously been registered by another user. Ownership has now been changed to your account."

## Rules

Portal rule configuration is available under **Authentication > Guest Portals > Rules**.

### To configure portal rules:

1. Select **Create New** to configure new portal rules.
2. Enter the following information:



Note that the **Conditions** section is only available for configuring once the rule has already been created by selecting **OK**.

<b>General</b>	Configure the portal rule's general information, including its name and action.
<b>Name</b>	A name to identify the portal rule.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter information about the portal rule.
<b>Action</b>	Determine the action to take for the rule: assign a guest portal or assign no portal for the rule.

3. Select **OK** to add the new portal rule.

## Replacement messages

Guest portal replacement message mappings are available under **Authentication > Guest Portals > Replacement Messages**.

The replacement messages are split into four categories: **Authentication**, **Password Reset**, **User Registration**, and **Post-Login**.

Selecting a specific message will display the text and HTML or plain text of the message in the lower half of the content pane.

Selecting **Toggle Tag List** will display a table of the tags used for that message atop the message's HTML or plain text box.

### To edit a replacement message:

1. Select a message in the replacement message list.
2. Edit the plain text or HTML code in the lower right pane, or select the open in new window icon to edit the message in a new browser window.
3. When you are finished editing the message, select *Save* to save your changes.
4. If you have made an error when editing the message, select *Restore Default* to restore the message to its default value.

## Manage images

Images can be managed by selecting *Manage Images* in the *Replacement Messages* window. Images can also be added, deleted, and edited.

### To add an image:

1. In the manage images screen, select *Create New* to open the *Create New Image* window.
2. Enter a name for the image in the *Name* field.
3. Select *Browse...*, find the GIF, JPEG, or PNG image file that you are adding, and then select *Open*.  
**The maximum image size is 65kB.**
4. Select *OK* to add the image.

**To delete an image:**

1. In the manage images screen, select an image, then select *Delete*.
2. Select *Yes, I'm sure* in the confirmation window to delete the image.

**To edit an image:**

In the manage images screen, select an image, then select *Edit*.

1. In the *Edit Image* window, edit the image name and file as required.
2. Select *OK* to apply your changes.

## Smart Connect profiles

Smart Connect profiles are available under **Authentication > Guest Portals > Smart Connect Profiles**.

This feature provides the ability to set up network settings (such as WiFi configuration) on an endpoint by downloading a script or an executable (depending on the endpoint's OS) via the FortiAuthenticator's guest portal.

Once configured, the Smart Connect feature will show up as a new button on the guest portal's post-login main page:



When clicking on the Smart Connect button, the user is given the option to download a self-install file for the OS type of their choice, including iOS, Android, Windows, and Linux. A device ID can also be entered too, however this is only available if the Smart Connect profile uses EAP-TLS. If entered, the ID will be used to generate the end-user certificate.

**To configure a Smart Connect profile:**

1. Select **Create New** to start the profile configuration wizard.
2. Enter a **Name** and select **Next** (you cannot configure a different **Connect type** other than **Wireless**).
3. Enter an **SSID** and select the **Auth method** to use: **WPA2 Personal** or **WPA2 Enterprise**.  
You can optionally enable or disable **Hidden SSID** to show or hide the SSID. When finished, select **Next**.
4. Enter a **Pre-shared Key**, then select **Next**.
5. You will see the **Review All Settings** page, where you can review and change any of the previously set options, and define more settings, as shown below:

Review All Settings

Name:	<input type="text"/>
SSID:	<input type="text"/>
Connect type:	Wireless ▼
Authentication:	WPA2 Personal ▼
<input type="checkbox"/> Hidden SSID	
Pre-shared Key:	.....
Anonymous Identity:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Anonymous <input type="radio"/> Username
Username Format:	Username ▼
<input type="checkbox"/> Include user credentials in configuration file	
EAP Type:	[ Please Select ] ▼
Signing CA:	[ Please Select ] ▼
Phase 2 Authentication:	MSCHAPv2 ▼
Install local CA certificates:	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Available Install local CA certificates ?</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <input type="text" value="Filter"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> FGT_ICA1   C=CA, ST=ON, L=Ottawa, O=For  FMI_FIPS   ST=ON, O=Fortinet, CN=172.20.1  FMI_FIPS1   ST=ON, O=Fortinet, CN=172.20.  KerrieFWBTest   C=CA, ST=ON, L=Ottawa, O=  KerrieFWBTest2   C=CA, ST=ON, L=Ottawa, C  fgtca   C=CA, O=Fortinet, CN=Adam Bristow </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="➕"/> <input type="button" value="➖"/> </div> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Chosen Install local CA certificates ?</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; height: 100px;"></div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="➕"/> <input type="button" value="➖"/> </div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Choose all"/> <input type="button" value="Remove all"/> </div>
Install trusted CA certificates:	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Available Install trusted CA certificates ?</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <input type="text" value="Filter"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Firmware_Default   C=US, ST=California, L=S </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="➕"/> <input type="button" value="➖"/> </div> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Chosen Install trusted CA certificates ?</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; height: 100px;"></div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="➕"/> <input type="button" value="➖"/> </div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="Choose all"/> <input type="button" value="Remove all"/> </div>

6. Select **OK** to apply your options and finish the configuration.

Once created, a Smart Connect profile can be associated with a guest portal and be available as a post-login service (see **Post-login Services** under [Portals](#)).

## Smart Connect for Windows

The Smart Connect for Windows feature provides an executable file that adds specific network settings to an end-user's Windows device. The Smart Connect profile settings are the same as the ones implemented for iOS and macOS. The main difference is in how the downloaded executable file is built and packaged, so that it installs seamlessly on Windows devices.

## Self-service URL

When using the device tracking feature, users are no longer redirected by the FortiGate after initial device registration. Instead, the FortiAuthenticator provides a specific URL for each guest portal, as derived from the guest portal name (under **Authentication > Guest Portals > Portals**).

When the end user navigates to the self-service URL, they must provide valid credentials to get network access, but the login does not trigger the call to the FortiGate's API.



Please note that special characters must be encoded in the self-service URL.

---



### Firmware upgrade

When upgrading from a previous release, as a result of the device tracking feature, the following occurs:

- MAB **Unauthorized devices** are set to **Deny access** by default for existing RADIUS clients.
  - MAB **Blocked groups** are set to **empty** by default for existing RADIUS clients.
  - Device tracking and device management are disabled by default for existing guest portals.
  - Existing replacement messages are left unchanged for existing guest portals.
  - New (default) replacement messages are added to existing guest portals.
- 

## Remote authentication servers

If you already have LDAP or RADIUS servers configured on your network, FortiAuthenticator can connect to them for remote authentication, much like FortiOS remote authentication.

### General

Go to **Authentication > Remote Auth. Servers > General** to edit general settings for remote LDAP and RADIUS authentication servers.

### Remote LDAP

Enter the number of seconds between 1-3600 (or one second to one hour) for the LDAP server response and status cache timeouts.

## Remote RADIUS

Select whether the remote RADIUS server requires case sensitive usernames.

## LDAP

If you have existing LDAP servers, you may choose to continue using them with FortiAuthenticator by configuring them as remote LDAP servers.



When entering the remote LDAP server information, if any information is missing or in the wrong format, error messages will highlight the problem for you.



FortiAuthenticator supports multiple Windows AD server forests, with a maximum of 20 remote LDAP servers with Windows AD enabled.

To view all information about your multiple servers, go to **Monitor > Authentication > Windows AD**.

---

**To add a remote LDAP server entry:**

1. Go to **Authentication > Remote Auth. Servers > LDAP** and select **Create New**. The **Create New LDAP Server** window opens.

**Create New LDAP Server**

<b>Name:</b>	<input type="text"/>		
<b>Primary server name/IP:</b>	<input type="text"/>	<b>Port:</b>	<input type="text" value="389"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Use secondary server			
<b>Base distinguished name:</b>	<input type="text"/>		
<b>Bind type:</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Simple <input type="radio"/> Regular		
<input type="checkbox"/> Add supported domain names (used only if this is not a Windows Active Directory server)			

**Query Elements**

<b>Pre-defined templates:</b>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">--- Please select a template --- ▼</div> <div style="margin-left: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Apply</div> </div>
<b>User object class:</b>	<input type="text" value="person"/>
<b>Username attribute:</b>	<input type="text" value="sAMAccountName"/>
<b>Group object class:</b>	<input type="text" value="group"/>
<b>Obtain group memberships from:</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> User attribute <input type="radio"/> Group attribute
<b>Group membership attribute:</b>	<input type="text" value="memberOf"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Force use of administrator account for group membership lookups	

**Secure Connection**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>Protocol:</b> <input type="radio"/> LDAPS <input type="radio"/> STARTTLS
<b>CA certificate:</b> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <span>[ Please Select ]</span> <span>▼</span> </div>

**Windows Active Directory Domain Authentication**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
<b>Kerberos realm name:</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Domain NetBIOS name:</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>FortiAuthenticator NetBIOS name:</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Administrator username:</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Administrator password:</b>	<input type="password"/>

OK

Cancel

2. Enter the following information.

<b>Name</b>	Enter the name for the remote LDAP server on FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Primary server name/IP</b>	Enter the IP address or FQDN for this remote server.
<b>Port</b>	Enter the port number.
<b>Use secondary server</b>	Select to use a secondary server. The secondary server name/IP and port must be entered.
<b>Secondary server name/IP</b>	Enter the IP address or FQDN for the secondary remote server. This option is only available when <b>Use secondary server</b> is selected.

<b>Secondary port</b>	Enter the port number for the secondary server. This option is only available when <b>Use secondary server</b> is selected.
<b>Base distinguished name</b>	Enter the base distinguished name for the server using the correct X.500 or LDAP format. The maximum length of the DN is 512 characters. You can also select the browse button to view and select the DN on the LDAP server.
<b>Bind Type</b>	<p>The Bind Type determines how the authentication information is sent to the server. Select the bind type required by the remote LDAP server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Simple</b>: bind using the user's password which is sent to the server in plaintext without a search.</li> <li>• <b>Regular</b>: bind using the user's DN and password and then search.</li> </ul> <p>If the user records fall under one directory, you can use <b>Simple</b> bind type. But <b>Regular</b> is required to allow a search for a user across multiple domains.</p>
<b>Add supported domain names (used only if this is not a Windows Active Directory server)</b>	Select to enter multiple domain names for remote LDAP server configurations. The FortiAuthenticator can then identify the domain that users on the LDAP server belong to.

3. If you want to want to import a specific LDAP system's template, under **Query Elements**, enter the following:

<b>Pre-defined templates</b>	Select a pre-defined template from the dropdown menu: <b>Microsoft Active Directory</b> , <b>OpenLDAP</b> , or <b>Novell eDirectory</b> .
<b>User object class</b>	The type of object class to search for a user name search. The default is <b>person</b> .
<b>Username attribute</b>	The LDAP attribute that contains the user name. The default is <b>sAMAccountName</b> .
<b>Group object class</b>	The type of object class to search for a group name search. The default is <b>group</b> .
<b>Obtain group memberships from</b>	The LDAP attribute (either user or group) used to obtain group membership. The default is <b>User attribute</b> .
<b>Group membership attribute</b>	Used as the attribute to search for membership of users or groups in other groups.
<b>Force use of administrator account for group membership lookups</b>	Enabling this feature prevents non-admin users from searching their own attributes even after successful binding. This feature has been implemented to enhance Oracle-based ODSEE LDAP support.

4. If you want to have a secure connection between FortiAuthenticator and the remote LDAP server, under **Secure Connection**, select **Enable**, then enter the following:

<b>Protocol</b>	Select <b>LDAPS</b> or <b>STARTLS</b> as the LDAP server requires.
-----------------	--



<b>CA Certificate</b>	Select the CA certificate that verifies the server certificate from the dropdown menu.
-----------------------	--

- If you want to authenticate users using MSCHAP2 PEAP in an Active Directory environment, enable **Windows Active Directory Domain Authentication**, then enter the required Windows AD Domain Controller information.

<b>Kerberos realm name</b>	Enter the domain's DNS name in uppercase letters.
<b>Domain NetBIOS name</b>	Enter the domain's DNS prefix in uppercase letters.
<b>FortiAuthentication NetBIOS name</b>	Enter the NetBIOS name that identifies FortiAuthenticator as a domain member.
<b>Administrator username</b>	Enter the name of the user account that's used to associate FortiAuthenticator with the domain. This user must have at least domain user privileges.
<b>Administrator password</b>	Enter the administrator account's password.

When you are finished here, go to **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients** to choose whether authentication is available for all Windows AD users or only for Windows AD users who belong to particular user groups that you select. See [RADIUS service on page 1](#) for more information.

- If you want to import remote LDAP users, select to either **Import users** or **Import users by group memberships** under **Remote LDAP Users**. Once a method is chosen, select **Go**. This will open a separate window where you may specify the LDAP server, apply filters, and attributes. Select **Configure user attributes** to apply/edit the following LDAP user mapping attributes:

<b>Username</b>	Enter the remote LDAP user's name.
<b>First name</b>	Enter the attribute that specifies the user's first name. Set to <b>givenName</b> by default.
<b>Last name</b>	Enter the attribute that specifies the user's last name. Set to <b>sn</b> by default.
<b>Email</b>	Enter the attribute that specifies the user's email address. Set to <b>mail</b> by default.
<b>Phone</b>	Enter the attribute that specifies the user's number. Set to <b>telephoneNumber</b> by default.
<b>Mobile number</b>	Enter the attribute that specifies the user's mobile number. Set to <b>mobile</b> by default.
<b>FTK-200 serial number</b>	Enter the remote LDAP user's FortiToken serial number.
<b>Certificate binding common name</b>	Enter the remote LDAP user's certificate-binding CN. When this field is populated, the <b>Certificate binding CA</b> must also be specified.
<b>Certificate binding CA</b>	Local or trusted CAs to apply for the remote LDAP user. Must be specified if the <b>Certificate binding common name</b> is populated.

7. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

You can now add remote LDAP users, as described in [Remote users on page 1](#).

## Remote LDAP password change

Windows AD users can conveniently change their passwords without provision changes being made to the network by a Windows AD system administrator. There are three ways FortiAuthenticator supports a password change: RADIUS login, GUI user login, and GUI user portal.

### RADIUS login:

For the method to work, all of the following conditions must be met:

- FortiAuthenticator has joined the Windows AD domain.
- RADIUS client has been configured to "Use Windows AD domain authentication".
- RADIUS authentication request uses MS-CHAPv2.
- RADIUS client must also support MS-CHAPv2 password change.

A "change password" response will be produced that FortiAuthenticator will recognize, which will allow cooperation between the NAS and the Windows AD server that will result in a password change.

### GUI user login:

For this method to work, **one** of the following conditions must be met:

- FortiAuthenticator has joined the Windows AD domain
- Secure LDAP is enabled and the LDAP admin (i.e. regular bind) has the permissions to reset user passwords

You must log in via the GUI portal. FortiAuthenticator will validate the user password against a Windows AD server. The Windows AD server will return with a "change password" response. If that happens, the user will be prompted to enter a new password.

### GUI user portal:

For this method to work, **one** of the following conditions must be met:

- FortiAuthenticator has joined the Windows AD domain.
- Secure LDAP is enabled.

Once successfully logged into the GUI, the user has access to the user portal. If desired, the user can change their password in the user portal.

## RADIUS

If you have existing RADIUS servers, you may choose to continue using them with FortiAuthenticator by configuring them as remote RADIUS servers. This feature can also be used to migrate away from third-party two-factor authentication platforms.



When entering the remote RADIUS server information, if any information is missing or in the wrong format, error messages will highlight the problem for you.

### To add a remote RADIUS server entry:

1. Go to **Authentication > Remote Auth. Servers > RADIUS** and select **Create New**. The **Create New RADIUS Server** window opens.
2. Enter the following information, then select **OK** to add the RADIUS server.

<b>Name</b>	Enter the name for the remote RADIUS server on FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Preferred auth. method</b>	Select from either <b>MSCHAPv2</b> (by default), <b>MSCHAP</b> , <b>CHAP</b> , or <b>PAP</b> .
<b>Timeout</b>	Enter a timeout in seconds between 1-30 seconds (3 by default).  Note that a high timeout may impact the processing rate of authentication requests if the remote RADIUS server becomes unresponsive.
<b>Primary Server</b>	Enter the server name or IP address, port, and secret in the fields provided to configure the primary server.
<b>Secondary Server</b>	Optionally, add redundancy by configuring a secondary server.
<b>User Migration</b>	Select <b>Enable learning mode</b> to record and learn users that authenticate against this RADIUS server. This option should be enabled if you need to migrate users from the server to the FortiAuthenticator.  Select <b>View Learned Users</b> to view the list of learned users. See <a href="#">Learned RADIUS users on page 1</a> .

## RADIUS service

Before FortiAuthenticator can accept RADIUS authentication requests from a FortiGate unit, the FortiGate unit must be registered as a authentication client on FortiAuthenticator.

The FortiAuthenticator RADIUS server is already configured and running with default values. Each user account on FortiAuthenticator has an option to authenticate the user using the RADIUS database.

Every time there is a change to the list of RADIUS authentication clients, two log messages are generated: one for the client change, and one to state that the RADIUS server was restarted to apply the change.

FortiAuthenticator unit allows both RADIUS and remote authentication for RADIUS authentication client entries. If you want to use a remote server, you must configure it first so that you can be select it in the RADIUS authentication client configuration, see [Remote authentication servers on page 1](#). You can configure the built-in LDAP server before or after creating client entries, see [LDAP service on page 1](#).



For VM appliances, the ratio for RADIUS clients is "number of max users / 3".

The number of RADIUS profiles is "number of max users x 2", since each RADIUS client might need more than one profile.

See the **Maximum values** table included in the latest [FortiAuthenticator Release Notes](#) for more details.

## Clients

RADIUS accounting client can be managed from **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients**.

Clients can be added, imported, deleted, edited, and cloned as needed.

### To configure a RADIUS accounting client:

1. From the RADIUS client list, select Create New to add a new RADIUS client. The **Add RADIUS client** window opens.
2. Enter the following information:



Subnets and IP ranges can be defined in the **Client address** field. All authentication clients within a defined subnet/IP range will share the same configuration and secret. For example, 192.168.0.0/24 would allow all 255 IP addresses to authenticate.

This feature saves time, as the entry only takes up a single client entry in the license table.

<b>Name</b>	A name to identify the FortiGate unit.
<b>Client address</b>	The <b>IP/Hostname</b> , <b>Subnet</b> , or <b>Range</b> of the unit.
<b>Secret</b>	The RADIUS passphrase that the FortiGate unit will use.
<b>First profile name</b>	Enter the profile name of this RADIUS client.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter information about the FortiGate unit.
<b>Apply this profile based on RADIUS attributes</b>	Enable and apply RADIUS attributes to match to this RADIUS profile from the FortiAuthenticator's list of vendors in <b>RADIUS Service &gt; Custom Dictionaries</b> .
<b>EAP types</b>	Select the 802.1X EAP authentication types to accept. If you require mutual authentication, select <b>EAP-TLS</b> .
<b>Device Authentication</b>	<p>To allow 802.1X authentication for non-interactive devices, FortiAuthenticator can identify and bypass authentication for a device based on its MAC address.</p> <p>This is used for devices that do not allow the usual username or password input to perform 802.1X authentication, such as network printers. Enter these units in <b>Authentication &gt; User Management &gt; MAC Devices</b>.</p>

<b>MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB)</b>	<p>Configure MAB for certain devices, so long as their MAC addresses appear in the User-Name, User-Password, and Calling-Station-ID attributes.</p> <p>Define the authorized groups for this feature. Note that authorized groups must be first created under <b>Authentication &gt; User Management &gt; User Groups</b>, where <b>Type</b> must be set to <b>MAC</b>, and MAC devices are selected for MAC address authorization.</p> <p>In addition, you can optionally require the Call-Check attribute for MAC-based authentication too.</p>
<b>AD machine authentication</b>	<p>Configure AD machine authentication. Note that full access requires AD authentication of both the end point machine and user.</p> <p>In addition, you can optionally override group membership when specific user groups are machine or user authenticated.</p>
<b>MAC device filtering</b>	<p>Configure MAC device filtering. Define MAC address attributes, authorized groups, and action to take for unauthorized devices. The <b>MAC address attribute</b> indicates which RADIUS attribute to extract the MAC address from.</p> <p>MAC device filtering can be enabled for any RADIUS authentication, including Guest Portal authentication. However, when used for Guest Portals, the FortiAuthenticator needs to know which HTTP parameter to extract the MAC address from. You can enter the MAC device HTTP parameter under <b>Authentication &gt; Guest Portals &gt; Portals</b>.</p>
<b>User Authentication</b>	<p>Select one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enforce two-factor authentication</b></li> <li>• <b>Apply two-factor authentication if available (authenticate any user)</b></li> <li>• <b>Password-only authentication (exclude users without a password)</b></li> <li>• <b>FortiToken-only authentication (exclude users without a FortiToken)</b></li> </ul>
<b>Enable FortiToken Mobile push notifications authentication</b>	<p>Toggle on/off FTM Push notifications for RADIUS users. This setting is only controlled here on a per RADIUS client basis, not for specific users.</p>
<b>Username input format</b>	<p>Select one of the following three username input formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>username@realm</b></li> <li>• <b>realm\username</b></li> <li>• <b>realm/username</b></li> </ul>

**Realms**

Add realms to which the client will be associated.

- Select a realm from the dropdown menu in the **Realm** column.
- Select whether or not to allow local users to override remote users for the selected realm.
- Select whether or not to use Windows AD domain authentication.
- Edit the group filter as needed. That is, filter users based on the groups they are in.
- If necessary, add more realms to the list.
- Select the realm that will be the default realm for this client.

2. Select **OK** to add the new RADIUS client.



If authentication is failing, check that the authentication client is configured and that its IP address is correctly specified. Common causes of problems are:

- RADIUS packets being sent from an unexpected interface, or IP address.
- NAT being performed between the authentication client and FortiAuthenticator.

## MAC authentication bypass

The existing MAC authentication bypass (MAB) feature (under **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients**) supports returning Access-Accept with different RADIUS attributes for unauthorized devices, and also supports explicitly blocking pre-defined groups of devices.

Profiles are applied in descending order based on matching RADIUS attributes. If the profile has no attributes to match, that profile will always be applied before any that follow.

When processing MAB for an authorized device associated with a user, the FortiAuthenticator returns the RADIUS attributes of the authorized device group(s) of which the device is a member **as well as** the RADIUS attributes from the group memberships of the associated user (if any). Additionally, any RADIUS attributes assigned directly to the associated user are returned.

## Challenge message to support FortiToken Mobile Push for VPN clients

There are two Reply-Messages that the FortiAuthenticator can send to the FortiGate in the RADIUS ACCESS CHALLENGE messages. Each message is prefixed by an uneditable string followed by an editable string (i.e. replacement message in FortiAuthenticator):

1. If push is not available, FortiAuthenticator will send Prefix: "" followed by Default Replaceable String: "Enter Token Code". For example; "Enter Token Code".
2. If push is available, FortiAuthenticator will send Prefix: "+" followed by Default Replaceable String: "Choose FTM Push or Enter Token Code". For example; "+ Choose FTM Push or Enter Token Code".

## Client profile attributes

FortiAuthenticator supports a single authentication profile for each RADIUS Auth Client. Because of this, authentication requirements (for example IPSec/SSLVPN, Web Filtering Override, Wireless Authentication, and so on) require different profiles, as RADIUS authentication requests originate from the same IP address. To distinguish the authentication requirements, you can add attributes to them.

Attributes (which can be added to authentication requirements) indicate the type of service the user has requested, or the type of service to be provided.



Each FortiAuthenticator authentication client profile can contain up to two RADIUS attributes.

To match a profile, all specified attributes in a profile must match, if not, the processing will fall to the next profile (processed in top down order).

The profiles created can be re-arranged in terms of priority. FortiAuthenticator attempts to match the RADIUS attributes from an authentication request to each profile, starting with the highest-priority profile, and moves down the list until it finds a match. FortiAuthenticator uses the first profile that it matches.

### Importing authentication clients

Authentication client information can be imported as a CSV file by selecting **Import** from the RADIUS client list.

The CSV file has one record per line, with the record format: client name (maximum of 32 characters), FQDN or IP address (maximum of 128 characters), secret (optional, maximum of 63 characters).

## Extensible Authentication Protocol

FortiAuthenticator supports several IEEE 802.1X Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) methods. EAP settings can be configured from **Authentication > RADIUS Service > EAP**. See [EAP on page 1](#) for more information.

## Services

You can optionally change the RADIUS authentication, accounting SSO, and accounting monitor ports under **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Services**.

By default, the ports are set to:

- **RADIUS authentication port:** 1812
- **RADIUS accounting SSO port:** 1813
- **RADIUS accounting monitor port:** 1646



When upgrading from a firmware version prior to 5.0, and the **Enable RADIUS Accounting SSO clients** option is enabled under **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > General**, both the SSO accounting port and the usage monitoring accounting port should remain at their default values (1813 and 1646 respectively) in order to avoid service disruption.

## Custom dictionaries

The custom dictionary list enables you to view built-in vendors and their RADIUS attributes, and create new customized entries.

Go to **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Custom Dictionaries** to view the list.

Some services can receive information about an authenticated user through RADIUS vendor-specific attributes. FortiAuthenticator user groups and user accounts can include RADIUS attributes for Fortinet and other vendors.

Attributes in user accounts can specify user-related information. For example, the **Default** attribute **Framed-IP-Address** specifies the VPN tunnel IP address to be sent to the user by the Fortinet SSL VPN.

Attributes in user groups can specify more general information, applicable to the whole group. For example, specifying third-party vendor attributes to a switch could enable administrative level login to all members of the **Network\_Admins** group, or authorize the user to the correct privilege level on the system.

Create New

Built-in Vendors Custom Vendors

Vendor Id	Name	Attributes Count	Attributes
35265	Eltex	2	Eltex-AV/Pair, Eltex-Disconnect-Code-Local
34536	fdXtended	11	fdXtended-Bandwidth-Up, fdXtended-Bandwidth-Down, fdXtended-PostAuthURL, fdXtended-One2onenat-IP, fd...
32620	AnueSystems	4	Anue-Role, Anue-Groups, Anue-Service, Anue-Login-Status
27880	Freeswitch	23	Freeswitch-AV/Pair, Freeswitch-CLID, Freeswitch-Dialplan, Freeswitch-Src, Freeswitch-Dst, Freeswitch-...
27262	DANTE	1	Default-TTL
27030	Wichorus	2	Wichorus-Policy-Name, Wichorus-User-Privilege
26928	Aerohive	1	AH-HM-Admin-Group-Id
25622	UKERNA	1	SAML-AAA-Assertion
25506	H3C	4	H3C-Connect_Id, H3C-NAS-Startup-Timestamp, H3C-Ip-Host-Addr, H3C-Product-ID
25461	PaloAlto	5	PaloAlto-Admin-Role, PaloAlto-Admin-Access-Domain, PaloAlto-Panorama-Admin-Role, PaloAlto-Panorama-A...
25178	TERENA	2	eduroam-SP-Country, eduroam-Monitoring-Inflate
25053	Ruckus	10	Ruckus-User-Groups, Ruckus-Sta-RSSI, Ruckus-SSID, Ruckus-WlanID, Ruckus-Location, Ruckus-Grace-Perio...
24757	WIMAX	129	WIMAX-Capability, WIMAX-Device-Authentication-Indicator, WIMAX-GMT-Timezone-offset, WIMAX-AAA-Sessio...
24023	IEA-Software	5	AM-Interrupt-HTMLFile, AM-Interrupt-Interval, AM-Interrupt-Timeout, AM-Status-HTMLFile, AM-HTTP-Prox...
22736	Digium	18	Asterisk-Acc-Code, Asterisk-Src, Asterisk-Dst, Asterisk-Dst-Cbx, Asterisk-Clid, Asterisk-Chan, Aster...
22610	A10-Networks	5	A10-App-Name, A10-Admin-Privilege, A10-Admin-Partition, A10-Admin-Access-Type, A10-Admin-Role
21274	Camiant	3	Camiant-MI-role, Camiant-SUI-role, Camiant-MI-scope
21074	Purewave	7	Purewave-Client-Profile, Purewave-CS-Type, Purewave-Max-Downlink-Rate, Purewave-Max-Uplink-Rate, Pur...
19382	Manzara	14	Manzara-User-UID, Manzara-User-GID, Manzara-User-Home, Manzara-User-Shell, Manzara-PPP-Addr-String, ...
19220	Local-Web	15	Local-Web-Client-Ip, Local-Web-Border-Router, Local-Web-Tx-Limit, Local-Web-Rx-Limit, Local-Web-Acct...
19211	JRadius	3	JRadius-Request-Id, JRadius-Session-Id, JRadius-Proxy-Client
17163	Riverbed	1	Riverbed-Local-User
16924	BSkyB	6	Sky-Wifi-AP-ID, Sky-Wifi-Service-ID, Sky-Wifi-Filter-Profile, Sky-Wifi-Billing-Class, Sky-Wifi-Provi...
16787	T-Systems-Nova	15	T-Systems-Nova-Location-ID, T-Systems-Nova-Location-Name, T-Systems-Nova-Logoff-URL, T-Systems-Nova...
16459	Epygi	67	Epygi-AV/Pair, Epygi-NAS-Port, Epygi-h323-remote-address, Epygi-h323-conf-id, Epygi-h323-setup-time, ...
16445	Kineto	57	Kineto-UMA-Release-Indicator, Kineto-UMA-AP-Radio-Identity, Kineto-UMA-Cell-Identity, Kineto-UMA-Loc...
16313	ValemountNetworks	5	VNC-PPPoE-CBQ-RX, VNC-PPPoE-CBQ-TX, VNC-PPPoE-CBQ-RX-Fallback, VNC-PPPoE-CBQ-TX-Fallback, VNC-Splash
15983	Meru	2	Meru-Access-Point-Id, Meru-Access-Point-Name
14988	Mikrotik	22	Mikrotik-Recv-Limit, Mikrotik-Xmit-Limit, Mikrotik-Group, Mikrotik-Wireless-Forward, Mikrotik-Wirele...
14895	Propel	6	Propel-Accelerate, Propel-Dialed-Digits, Propel-Client-IP-Address, Propel-Client-NAS-IP-Address, Pro...
14823	Aruba	32	Aruba-User-Role, Aruba-User-Vlan, Aruba-Priv-Admin-User, Aruba-Admin-Role, Aruba-Essid-Name, Aruba-L...
14559	ChilliSpot	12	ChilliSpot-Max-Input-Octets, ChilliSpot-Max-Output-Octets, ChilliSpot-Max-Total-Octets, ChilliSpot-B...
14529	Tropos	28	Tropos-Unicast-Cipher, Tropos-Layer2-Input-Octets, Tropos-Layer2-Output-Octets, Tropos-Layer2-Input-...

To create a new custom RADIUS attribute vendor, open the **Custom Vendors** view and select **Create New** where you will be prompted to upload a RADIUS dictionary file.

### To add RADIUS attributes to a user or group:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > Local Users** and select a user account to edit, or go to **Authentication > User Management > User Groups** and select a group to edit.
2. In the **RADIUS Attributes** section, select **Add Attribute**. The **Create New User Group RADIUS Attribute** or **Create New User RADIUS Attribute** window opens.
3. Select the appropriate **Vendor** and **Attribute ID**, then enter the attribute's value in the **Value** field.
4. Select **OK** to add the new attribute to the user or group.
5. Repeat the above steps to add additional attributes as needed.



## LDAP service

LDAP is an Internet protocol used to maintain authentication data that may include departments, people, groups of people, passwords, email addresses, and printers. LDAP consists of a data-representation scheme, a set of defined operations, and a request/response network.

In the LDAP protocol there are a number of operations a client can request such as search, compare, and add or delete an entry. Binding is the operation where the LDAP server authenticates the user. If the user is successfully authenticated, binding allows the user access to the LDAP server based on the user's permissions.

### General

To configure general LDAP service settings, go to **Authentication > LDAP Service > General**.

LDAP Server Settings	
<b>LDAP server certificate</b>	Select the certificate that the LDAP server will present from the dropdown menu.
<b>Certificate authority type</b>	Select either <b>Local CA</b> or <b>Trusted CA</b> .
<b>CA certificate that issued the server certificate</b>	Select the CA certificate that issued the server certificate from the dropdown menu.
<b>LDAP User Auto Provisioning</b>	Enable this feature to specify how users can be automatically provisioned into LDAP.

Select **OK** to apply any changes that you have made.

### Directory tree overview

The LDAP tree defines the hierarchical organization of user account entries in the LDAP database. The FortiGate unit requesting authentication must be configured to address its request to the right part of the hierarchy.

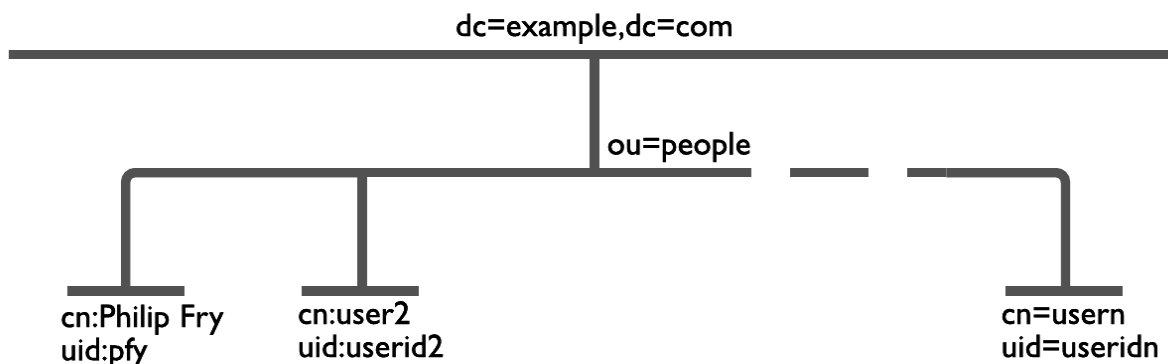
An LDAP server's hierarchy often reflects the hierarchy of the organization it serves. The root represents the organization itself, usually defined as Domain Component (DC), a DNS domain, such as `example.com` (as the name contains a dot, it is written as two parts separated by a comma: `dc=example,dc=com`). Additional levels of hierarchy can be added as needed; these include:

- Country (c)
- User Group (cn)
- Local User (uid)
- Organization (o)
- Organizational Unit (ou)

The user account entries relevant to user authentication will have element names such as UID or CN; the user's name. They can each be placed at their appropriate place in the hierarchy.

Complex LDAP hierarchies are more common in large organizations where users in different locations and departments have different access rights. For basic authenticated access to your office network or the Internet, a much simpler LDAP hierarchy is adequate.

The following is a simple example of an LDAP hierarchy in which the all user account entries reside at the OU level, just below DC.



When requesting authentication, an LDAP client, such as a FortiGate unit, must specify the part of the hierarchy where the user account record can be found. This is called the distinguished name (DN). In the above example, DN is `ou=People,dc=example,dc=com`.

The authentication request must also specify the particular user account entry. Although this is often called the common name (CN), the identifier you use is not necessarily CN. On a computer network, it is appropriate to use UID, the person's user ID, as that is the information that they will provide at logon.

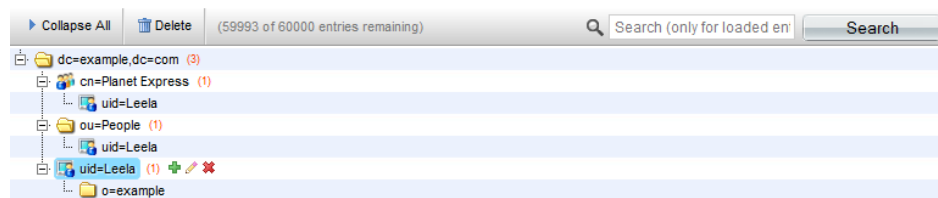
## Creating the directory tree

The following sections provide a brief explanation of each part of the LDAP attribute directory, what is commonly used for representation, and how to configure it on FortiAuthenticator.



When an object name includes a space, as in **Test Users**, you have to enclose the text with double-quotes. For example:

```
cn="TestUsers",cn=Builtin,dc=get,dc=local
```



## Editing the root node

The root node is the top level of the LDAP directory. There can be only one. All groups, OUs, and users branch off from the root node. Choose a DN that makes sense for your organization's root node.

There are three common forms of DN entries:

The most common consists of one or more DC elements making up the DN. Each part of the domain has its own DC entry. This comes directly from the DNS entry for the organization. For example, for example.com, the DN entry is "dc=example, dc=com".

Another popular method is to use the company's Internet presence as the DN. This method uses the domain name as the DN. For example, for example.com, the DN entry would be "o=example.com".

An older method is to use the company name with a country entry. For example, for Example Inc. operating in the United States, the DN would be o="Example, Inc.", c=US. This makes less sense for international companies.



When you configure FortiGate units to use FortiAuthenticator as an LDAP server, you will specify the distinguished name that you created here. This identifies the correct LDAP structure to reference.

#### To rename the root node:

1. Go to **Authentication > LDAP Service > Directory Tree**.
2. Select `dc=example, dc=com` to edit the entry.
3. In the **Distinguished Name (DN)** field, enter a new name (e.g. "dc=fortinet, dc=com").
4. Select **OK** to apply your changes.



If your domain name has multiple parts to it, such as shiny.widgets.example.com, each part of the domain should be entered as part of the DN, for example:

`dc=shiny, dc=widgets, dc=example, dc=com`

## Adding nodes to the LDAP directory tree

You can add a subordinate node at any level in the hierarchy as required.

#### To add a node to the tree:

1. From the LDAP directory tree, select the green plus symbol next to the DN entry where the node will be added. The **Create New LDAP Entry** window opens.
2. In the **Class** field, select the identifier to use.  
For example, to add the ou=People node from the earlier example, select Organizational Unit (ou).
3. Select the required value from the dropdown menu, or select **Create New** to create a new entry of the selected class.
4. Select **OK** to add the node.

Nodes can be edited after creation by selecting the edit, or pencil, icon next to the node name.

## Adding user accounts to the LDAP tree

You must add user account entries at the appropriate place in the LDAP tree. These users must already be defined in the FortiAuthenticator user database. See [Adding a user on page 1](#).

**To add a user account to the tree:**

1. From the LDAP directory tree, expand nodes as needed to find the required node, then select the node's green plus symbol.  
In the earlier example, you would do this on the `ou=People` node.
2. In the **Class** field, select **User (uid)**.  
The list of available users is displayed. You can choose to display them alphabetically by either user group or user.
3. Select the required users in the **Available Users** box and move them to the **Chosen Users** box. If you want all local users to be added, select **Choose all** below the users box.
4. Select **OK** to add the user account to the tree.

You can verify your users were added by expanding the node to see their UIDs listed below it.

**Moving LDAP branches in the directory tree**

At times you may want to rearrange the hierarchy of the LDAP structure. For example a department may be moved from one country to another.



While it is easy to move a branch in the LDAP tree, all systems that use this information will need to be updated to the new structure or they will not be able to authenticate users.

**To move an LDAP branch:**

1. From the LDAP directory tree, select **Expand All** and find the branch that is to be moved.
2. Click and drag the branch from its current location to its new location  
When the branch is hovered above a valid location, an arrow will appear to the left of the current branch to indicate where the new branch will be inserted. It will be inserted below the entry with the arrow.

**Removing entries from the directory tree**

Adding entries to the directory tree involves placing the attribute at the proper place. However, when removing entries it is possible to remove multiple branches at one time.



Take care not to remove more branches than you intend. Remember that all systems using this information will need to be updated to the new structure or they will not be able to authenticate users.

**To remove an entry from the LDAP directory tree:**

1. From the LDAP directory tree, select **Expand All** and find the branch that is to be removed.
2. Select the red X to the right of the entry name.  
You will be prompted to confirm your deletion. Part of the prompt displays the message of all the entries that will be removed with this deletion. Ensure this is the level that you intend to delete.
3. Select **Yes, I'm sure** to delete the entry.

If the deletion was successful there will be a green check next to the successful message above the LDAP directory and the entry will be removed from the tree.

## Configuring a FortiGate unit for FortiAuthenticator LDAP

When you have defined the FortiAuthenticator LDAP tree, you can configure FortiGate units to access the FortiAuthenticator as an LDAP server and authenticate users.

**To configure the FortiGate unit for LDAP authentication:**

1. On the FortiGate unit, go to **User & Device > LDAP Servers** and select **Create New**.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name to identify the FortiAuthenticator LDAP server on the FortiGate unit.
<b>Server IP/Name</b>	Enter the IP address FQDN of FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Server Port</b>	Leave at default (389).
<b>Common Name Identifier</b>	Enter <code>uid</code> , the user ID.
<b>Distinguished Name</b>	Enter the LDAP node where the user account entries can be found. For example, <code>ou=People, dc=example, dc=com</code>
<b>Bind Type</b>	<p>The FortiGate unit can be configured to use one of three types of binding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Simple:</b> Bind using a simple password authentication without a search.</li> <li>• <b>Anonymous:</b> Bind using anonymous user search.</li> <li>• <b>Regular:</b> Bind using username/password and then search.</li> </ul> <p>You can use simple authentication if the user records all fall under one distinguished name (DN). If the users are under more than one DN, use the anonymous or regular type, which can search the entire LDAP database for the required username.</p> <p>If your LDAP server requires authentication to perform searches, use the regular type and provide the <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b>.</p>
<b>Secure Connection</b>	If you select <b>Secure Connection</b> , you must select LDAPS or STARTTLS protocol and the CA security certificate that verifies FortiAuthenticator's identity. If you select LDAPS protocol, the Server Port will change to 636.

3. Optionally, use the **Test Connectivity** and **Test User Credentials** features. Select **OK** to apply your settings.
4. Add the LDAP server to a user group. Specify that user group in identity-based security policies where you require authentication.

## SAML IdP

Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) is used for exchanging authentication and authorization data between an identity provider (IdP) and a service provider (SP), such as Google Apps, Office 365, and Salesforce. The FortiAuthenticator can be configured as an IdP, providing trust relationship authentication for unauthenticated users trying to access an SP.

Different realms can be selectively enabled while configuring the FortiAuthenticator as the IdP. These realms are available under **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Access Control**, where they can be enabled, disabled, or group filtered.

SAML authentication works as follows:

1. A user tries to access an SP, for example Google, using a browser.
2. The SP's web server requests the SAML assertions for its service from the browser.
3. Two possibilities:
  - The user's browser already has valid SAML assertions, so it sends them to the SP's web server. The web server uses them to grant or deny access to the service. SAML authentication stops here.
  - The user's browser doesn't have valid SAML assertions, so the SP's web server redirects the browser to the SAML IdP.
4. Two possibilities:
  - The user's browser is already authenticated with the IdP, go to **step 5**.
  - The user's browser is not yet authenticated with the IdP, IdP requests and validates the user's credentials. If successful, go to **step 5**. Otherwise, access is denied.
5. IdP provides SAML assertions for the SP's and redirects the user's browser back to the SP's web server. Go back to **step 2**.

## General

To configure general SAML IdP portal settings, go to **Authentication > SAML IdP > General** and select **Enable SAML Identity Provider portal**.

Enter the following information:

<b>Device FQDN</b>	To configure this setting, you must enter a <b>Device FQDN</b> in the <b>System Information</b> widget in the <b>Dashboard</b> .
<b>Server address</b>	Enter the IP address, or FQDN, of the FortiAuthenticator device.

<b>Username input format</b>	Select one of the following three username input formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>username@realm</b></li><li>• <b>realm\username</b></li><li>• <b>realm/username</b></li></ul>
<b>Realms</b>	Select <b>Add a realm</b> to add the default local realm to which the users will be associated.  Use <b>Groups</b> and <b>Filter</b> to add specific user groups.
<b>Login session timeout</b>	Set the user's login session timeout limit between 5 - 1440 minutes (one day). The default is 480 minutes (eight hours).
<b>IDP certificate</b>	Select a certificate from the dropdown menu.

Select **OK** to apply any changes that you have made.

## Service providers

Service Providers can be managed from **Authentication > SAML IdP > Service Providers**.

**To configure a SAML service provider:**

1. Select **Create New**.

**Create New SAML Service Provider**

SP name:	<input type="text"/>		
IDP prefix:	<input type="text"/>	<a href="#">[Generate unique prefix]</a>	
IDP address:	Please configure SAML IDP server address first.		
IDP entity id:	<a href="http://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/metadata/">http://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/metadata/</a>		
IDP single sign-on URL:	<a href="https://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/login/">https://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/login/</a>		
IDP single logout URL:	<a href="https://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/logout/">https://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/logout/</a>		
	<a href="#">[Download IDP metadata]</a> <a href="#">[Import SP metadata]</a>		
SP entity id:	<input type="text"/>		
SP ACS (login) URL:	<input type="text"/>		
SP SLS (logout) URL:	<input type="text"/>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SAML request must be signed by SP			
Certificate fingerprint:	<input type="text"/>		
	<a href="#">[Import SP certificate]</a>		
Fingerprint algorithm:	Unknown		
<b>Authentication</b>			
Authentication method:	<input type="radio"/> Enforce two-factor authentication <input checked="" type="radio"/> Apply two-factor authentication if available (authenticate any user) <input type="radio"/> Password-only authentication (exclude users without a password) <input type="radio"/> FortiToken-only authentication (exclude users without a FortiToken)		
<input type="checkbox"/> Bypass FortiToken authentication when user is from a trusted subnet	<a href="#">[Configure subnets]</a>		
<b>Debugging Options</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Do not return to service provider automatically after successful authentication, wait for user input.			
<input type="checkbox"/> Disable this service provider			
<b>Assertion Attributes</b>			
Subject NameID:	<input type="text" value="Username"/>		
Format:	<input type="text" value="Unspecified"/>		
SAML Attribute	User Attribute	Actions	
<input type="button" value="Create New"/>			
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>			

## 2. Enter the following information:

<b>SP name</b>	Enter a name for the SP.
<b>IDP prefix</b>	Enter a prefix for the IDP that will be appended to the end of the IDP URLs.  Alternatively, you can select <b>Generate unique prefix</b> to generate a random 16 digit alphanumeric string.
<b>IDP address</b>	To configure the IDP address (and IDP settings below), you must have already configured the server's address under <b>Authentication &gt; SAML IdP &gt; General</b> .



<b>IDP entity id</b>	Configure the IDP's entity ID, for example: <code>http://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/metadata/</code>
<b>IDP single sign-on URL</b>	Configure the IDP's login URL, for example: <code>http://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/login/</code>
<b>IDP single logout URL</b>	Configure the IDP's logout URL, for example: <code>http://www.example.com/saml-idp/xxx/logout/</code>
<b>SP entity id</b>	Enter the SP's entity ID.
<b>SP ACS (login) URL</b>	Enter the SP's Assertion Consumer Service (ACS) login URL.
<b>SP SLS (logout) URL</b>	Enter the SP's Single Logout Service (SLS) logout URL.
<b>SAML request must be signed by SP</b>	Enable this option and import the SP certificate for authentication request signing by the SP.
<b>Authentication</b>	
<b>Authentication method</b>	<p>Select one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enforce two-factor authentication</b></li> <li>• <b>Apply two-factor authentication if available (authenticate any user)</b></li> <li>• <b>Password-only authentication (exclude users without a password)</b></li> <li>• <b>FortiToken-only authentication (exclude users without a FortiToken)</b></li> </ul>
<b>Bypass FortiToken authentication when user is from a trusted subnet</b>	<p>Enable this option if you would like to have certain users bypass FortiToken authentication, so long as they belong to a trusted subnet.</p> <p>Select <b>Configure subnets</b> to be directed to configure trusted subnets (under <b>Authentication &gt; User Account Policies &gt; Trusted Subnets</b>).</p>
<b>Debugging Options</b>	
<b>Do not return to service provider automatically after successful authentication, wait for user input</b>	Enable this option to let users choose where to navigate to once authenticated.
<b>Disable this service provider</b>	Disables the SP.
<b>Assertion Attributes</b>	

<b>Subject NameID</b>	<p>Select the user attribute that serves as SAML assertion subject NameID.</p> <p>Select from either <b>Username</b>, <b>Email</b>, <b>Remote LDAP user DN</b>, or <b>Remote LDAP user objectGUID</b>. If the attribute being selected is not available for a user, <b>Username</b> will be used by default.</p>
<b>Format</b>	Select from <b>Unspecified</b> , <b>Transient</b> , or <b>Persistent</b> .
<b>SAML Attribute</b>	<p>Select <b>Create New</b> to create a new attribute that will be added to SAML assertion.</p> <p>The following user attributes are available when creating a new assertion attribute:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Username</b></li> <li>• <b>First name</b></li> <li>• <b>Last name</b></li> <li>• <b>Email</b></li> <li>• <b>FortiAuthenticator local group</b></li> <li>• <b>Remote LDAP DN</b></li> <li>• <b>Remote LDAP sAMAccountName</b></li> <li>• <b>Remote LDAP userPrincipalName</b></li> <li>• <b>Remote LDAP displayName</b></li> <li>• <b>Remote LDAP objectGUID</b></li> <li>• <b>Remote LDAP group</b></li> </ul>

### Customizable successful login page

The screen that appears for a successful SAML IdP login can be customized under **Authentication > Self-service Portal > Replacement Messages**, under **SAML IdP**.

See [Replacement messages](#) for more information.

## FortiAuthenticator agents

FortiAuthenticator provides multiple agents for use in two-factor authentication:

- FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows
- FortiAuthenticator Agent for Outlook Web Access

Both agents can be downloaded from the FortiAuthenticator GUI under **Authentication > FortiAuthenticator Agent**.

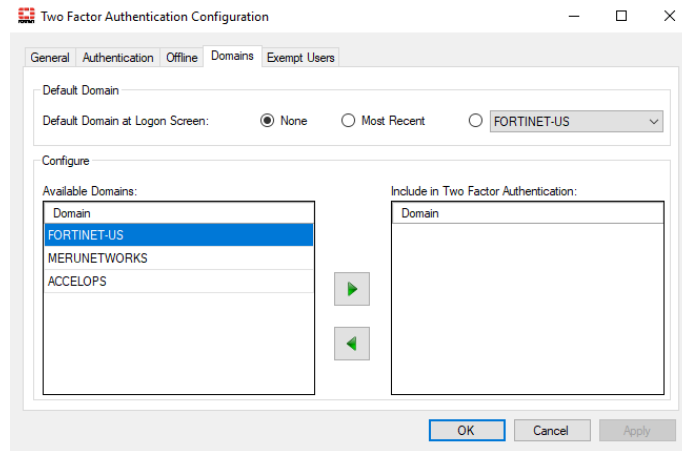
### FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows

FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows is a credential provider plug-in that allows the Windows login process to be enhanced with a one time password, validated by FortiAuthenticator.

## Configurable default domain

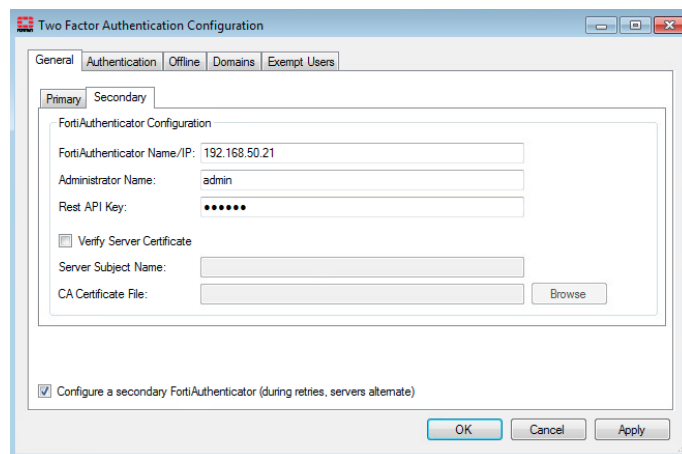
When configuring two-factor authentication in the FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows, you can select a **Default Domain at Logon Screen**. The options are **None**, **Most Recent**, and a populated list of available domains (also configurable).

This is particularly useful for environments that have a single domain (where previously, the user had to manually pick a domain from a dropdown every single login, even in single-domain environments).



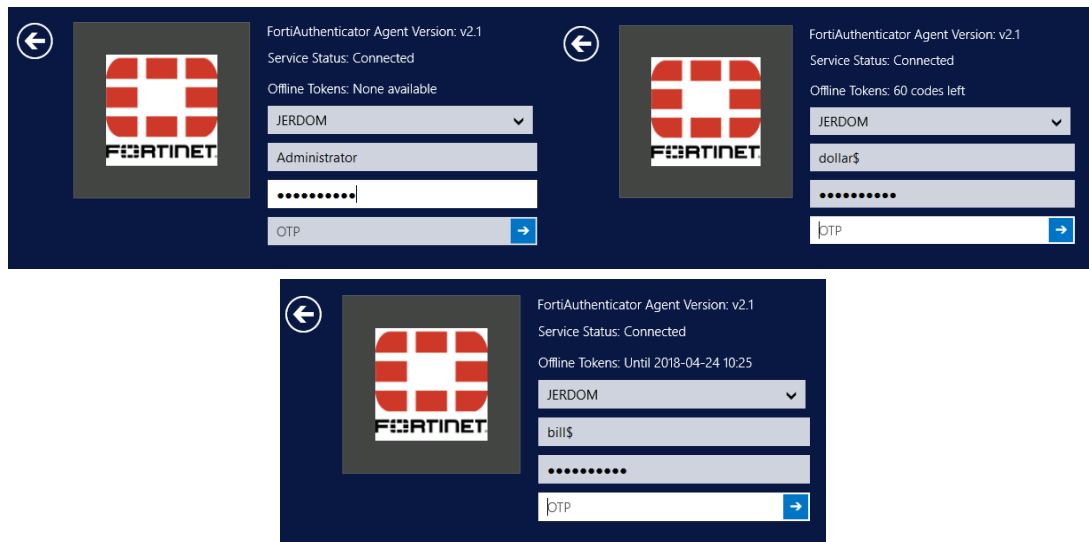
## Load-balancing HA configurations

Customers with a load-balancing HA configuration can configure the FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows to try to reach the secondary FortiAuthenticator if the primary is unreachable, with retries occurring in the same order (in round-robin fashion).



## Offline token validation at login

You can view the time remaining for offline token validation when logging in using the FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows.



For all tokens, FortiAuthenticator downloads enough offline tokens for the configured cache size plus the authentication window size (so if the HOTP cache = 50 and the HOTP window = 10, you initially have 60 tokens remaining; when tokens are displayed but not submitted to FortiAuthenticator, this ends up being fewer than 60 authentication attempts).

## TLS 1.2 support

All network communications take place over TLS 1.2. As a result, the minimum required version of the .NET Framework is 4.6.0. The FortiAuthenticator Agent for Microsoft Windows installer will offer to install TLS 1.2 when it is necessary.

## FortiAuthenticator Agent for Outlook Web Access

FortiAuthenticator Agent for Outlook Web Access is a plug-in that allows the Outlook Web login to be enhanced with a one time password, validated by FortiAuthenticator.

# Port-based network access control

Port-based network access control (PNAC), or 802.1X, authentication requires a client, an authenticator, and an authentication server (such as a FortiAuthenticator device).

The client is a device that wants to connect to the network. The authenticator is simply a network device, such as a wireless access point or switch. The authentication server is usually a host that supports the RADIUS and EAP protocols.

The client is not allowed access to the network until the client's identity has been validated and authorized. Using 802.1X authentication, the client provides credentials to the authenticator, which the authenticator forwards to the authentication server for verification. If the authentication server determines that the credentials are valid, the client device is allowed access to the network.

FortiAuthenticator supports several IEEE 802.1X EAP methods.

## Extensible Authentication Protocol

FortiAuthenticator supports several IEEE 802.1X Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) methods. These include authentication methods most commonly used in WiFi networks.

EAP is defined in RFC 3748 and updated in RFC 5247. EAP does not include security for the conversation between the client and the authentication server, so it is usually used within a secure tunnel technology such as TLS, TTLS, or MS-CHAP.

FortiAuthenticator supports the following EAP methods:

Method	Server Auth	Client Auth	Encryption	Native OS Support
PEAP (MSCHAPv2)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Windows XP, Vista, 7, 8, 10
EAP-TTLS	Yes	No	Yes	Windows Vista, 7, 8, 10
EAP-TLS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Windows (XP, 7, 8, 10), Mac OS X, iOS, Linux, Android
EAP-GTC	Yes	Yes	Yes	None (external supplicant required)

In addition to providing a channel for user authentication, EAP methods also provide certificate-based authentication of the server computer. EAP-TLS provides mutual authentication: the client and server authenticate each other using certificates. This is essential for authentication onto an enterprise network in a BYOD environment.

For successful EAP-TLS authentication, the user's certificate must be bound to their account in **Authentication > User Management > Local Users** (see [Local users on page 1](#)) and the relevant RADIUS client in **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients** (see [RADIUS service on page 1](#)) must permit that user to authenticate. By default, all local users can authenticate, but it is possible to limit authentication to specified user groups.

## FortiAuthenticator and EAP

FortiAuthenticator delivers all of the authentication features required for a successful EAP-TLS deployment, including:

- **Certificate Management:** Create and revoke certificates as a CA. See [Certificate Management on page 1](#).
- **Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) Server:** Exchange a certificate signing request (CSR) and the resulting signed certificate, simplifying the process of obtaining a device certificate.

## FortiAuthenticator unit configuration

To configure FortiAuthenticator, you need to:

1. Create a CA certificate for FortiAuthenticator. See [Certificate authorities on page 1](#).  
Optionally, you can skip this step and use an external CA certificate instead. Go to **Certificate Management > Certificate Authorities > Trusted CAs** to import CA certificates. See [Trusted CAs on page 1](#).
2. Create a server certificate for FortiAuthenticator, using the CA certificate you created or imported in the preceding step. See [End entities on page 1](#).
3. If you configure EAP-TTLS authentication, go to **Authentication > RADIUS Service > EAP** and configure the certificates for EAP. See [Configuring certificates for EAP on page 134](#).
4. If SCEP will be used:
  - Configure an SMTP server to be used for sending SCEP notifications. Then configure the email service for the administrator to use the SMTP server that you created. See [Email services on page 1](#).
  - Go to **Certificate Management > SCEP > General**, select **Enable SCEP**, select the CA certificate that you created or imported in Step 1 in the **Default CA** field, and select **OK**. See [SCEP on page 1](#).
5. Go to **Authentication > Remote Auth. Servers > LDAP** and add the remote LDAP server that contains your user database. See [LDAP on page 1](#).
6. Import users from the remote LDAP server. You can choose which specific users will be permitted to authenticate. See [Remote users on page 1](#).
7. Go to **Authentication > RADIUS Service > Clients** to add the FortiGate wireless controller as an authentication client. Be sure to select the type of EAP authentication you intend to use. See [RADIUS service on page 1](#).

## Configuring certificates for EAP

FortiAuthenticator can authenticate itself to clients with a CA certificate.

1. Go to **Certificate Management > Certificate Authorities > Trusted CAs** to import the certificate you will use. See [Trusted CAs on page 1](#).
2. Go to **Authentication > RADIUS Service > EAP**.
3. Select the EAP server certificate from the **EAP Server Certificate** dropdown menu.
4. Select the trusted CAs and local CAs to use for EAP authentication from their requisite lists.
5. Select **OK** to apply the settings.

## Configuring switches and wireless controllers to use 802.1X authentication

The 802.1X configuration will be largely vendor dependent. The key requirements are:

- **RADIUS server IP:** This is the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator.
- **Key:** The pre-shared secret configured in the FortiAuthenticator authentication client settings.
- **Authentication port:** By default, FortiAuthenticator listens for authentication requests on port 1812.

## Non-compliant devices

802.1X methods require interactive entry of user credentials to prove a user's identity before allowing them access to the network. This is not possible for non-interactive devices, such as printers. MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) is supported to allow non-802.1X compliant devices to be identified and accepted onto the network using their MAC address as authentication.

This feature is only for 802.1X MAB. FortiGate captive portal MAC authentication is supported by configuring the MAC address as a standard user, with the MAC address as both the username and password, and not by entering it in the **MAC Devices** section.

Multiple MAC devices can be imported in bulk from a CSV file. The first column of the CSV file contains the device names (maximum of 50 characters), and the second column contains the corresponding MAC addresses (0123456789AB or 01:23:45:67:89:AB).

When creating a new MAC-based authentication device, MAC addresses can be defined using wildcard capability to identify and accept all devices from a specific vendor. The first three bytes of a MAC address identify the vendor of the device. Define MAC devices using only the top three bytes to include all devices from a specific vendor. The following wildcard input formats are valid:

- 112233
- 11:22:33
- 112233xxxxxx
- 11:22:33:xx:xx:xx

### To configure MAC-based authentication for a device:

1. Go to **Authentication > User Management > MAC Devices**. The MAC device list will be shown.
2. If you are adding a new device, select **Create New** to open the **Create New MAC-based Authentication Device** window.  
If you are editing an already existing device, select the device from the device list.
3. Enter the device name in the **Name** field.
4. Enter the device's MAC address in the **MAC address** field. Alternatively, enter a wildcard MAC address to represent all MAC devices from a specific vendor.
5. Select **OK** to apply your changes.

### To import MAC devices:

1. In the MAC device list, select **Import**.
2. Select **Browse** to locate the CSV file on your computer.

3. Select **OK** to import the list.

The import will fail if the maximum number of MAC devices has already been reached, or if any of the information contained within the file does not conform, for example if the device name too long, or there is an incorrectly formatted MAC address.



# Fortinet Single Sign-On

Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) is a set of methods to transparently authenticate users to FortiGate devices. This means that FortiAuthenticator is trusting the implicit authentication of a different system, and using that to identify the user. FortiAuthenticator takes this framework and enhances it with several authentication methods:

- Users can authenticate through a web portal and a set of embeddable widgets.
- Users with FortiClient Endpoint Security installed can be automatically authenticated through the FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent.
- Users authenticating against Active Directory can be automatically authenticated.
- RADIUS Accounting packets can be used to trigger an FSSO authentication.
- Users can be identified through the FortiAuthenticator API. This is useful for integration with third-party systems.



This section describes FSSO only. FSSO authentication methods do not require accounting proxy configuration.

---

FortiAuthenticator must be configured to collect the relevant user logon data. After this basic configuration is complete, the various methods of collecting the log in information can be set up as needed.

## Domain controller polling

When the FortiAuthenticator runs for the first time, it will poll the domain controller (DC) logs backwards until either the end of the log file or the logon timeout setting, whichever is reached first.

When the FortiAuthenticator is rebooted, the memory cache is written to the disk, then re-read at startup, allowing the previous state to be retained. Windows DC polling restarts on boot, then searches backwards in the DC log files until it reaches either the log that matches the last known serial number found in the login cache file, the log that is older than the last recorded read time, or the end of the log file, whichever is reached first.

The currently logged in FSSO users list is cached in memory and periodically written to disk. In an active-passive HA cluster, this file is synchronized to the slave device.

## Windows management instrumentation polling

FortiAuthenticator supports Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) polling to detect workstation log off. This validates the currently logged on user for an IP address that has been discovered by the DC polling detection method.

Remote WMI access requires that the related ports are opened in the Windows firewall, and access to a domain account that belongs to the domain admin group.

To open ports in the Windows firewall in Windows 7, run `gpedit.msc`, go to **Computer configuration > Administrative Templates > Network > Network Connections > Windows Firewall > Domain Profile**, go to **Allow remote admin exception**, then enable **remote admin exception** and, if necessary, configure an IP subnet/range.

## General settings

FortiAuthenticator units listen for requests from authentication clients and can poll Windows AD servers.

### To configure FortiAuthenticator FSSO polling:

1. Go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > General** to open the **Edit SSO Configuration** window. The **Edit SSO Configuration** window contains sections for FortiGate, FSSO, and user group membership.
2. In the **FortiGate** section, configure the following settings:

Edit SSO Configuration	
<b>FortiGate</b>	
Listening port:	<input type="text" value="8000"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable authentication	
Secret key:	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Login expiry:	<input type="text" value="480"/> minutes
Extend user session beyond logoff by:	<input type="text" value="0"/> seconds (0-3600)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable NTLM authentication	
User domain:	<input type="text"/>

<b>Listening port</b>	Leave at 8000 unless your network requires you to change this. Ensure this port is allowed through the firewall.
<b>Enable authentication</b>	Select to enable authentication, then enter a secret key, or password, in the <b>Secret key</b> field.
<b>Login expiry</b>	The length of time, in minutes, that users can remain logged in before the system logs them off automatically. The default is 480 minutes (8 hours).
<b>Extend user session beyond logoff by</b>	The length of time, in seconds, that a user session is extended after the user logs off, from 0 (default) to 3600 seconds.
<b>Enable NTLM authentication</b>	Select to enable NTLM authentication, then enter the NETBIOS or DNS name of the domain that the login user belongs to in the <b>User domain</b> field.

3. In the **Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)** section, configure the following settings:

Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)	
Maximum concurrent user sessions:	0 [Configure Per User/Group]
Log level:	Info [Configure Log Filter]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Windows event log polling (e.g. domain controllers/Exchange servers)	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable polling additional logon events	
Additional logon event timeout:	480 minutes (1-7200)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable DNS lookup to get IP from workstation name	
<input type="checkbox"/> Directly use domain DNS suffix in lookup	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable reverse DNS lookup to get workstation name from IP	
<input type="checkbox"/> Do one more DNS lookup to get full list of IPs after reverse lookup of workstation name	
<input type="checkbox"/> Include account name ending with \$ (usually computer account)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable RADIUS Accounting SSO clients	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Syslog SSO [Configure syslog sources]	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent Service	
FortiClient listening port:	8001
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable authentication	
Secret key:	*****
Keep-alive interval:	5 minutes (1-60)
Idle timeout:	10 minutes
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable NTLM	
NTLM authentication expiry:	480 minutes (1-10080)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable hierarchical FSSO tiering	
Collector listening port:	8003
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable DC/TS Agent Clients	
DC/TS Agent listening port:	8002
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable authentication	
Secret key:	*****
<input type="checkbox"/> Restrict auto-discovered domain controllers to configured Windows event log sources	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Windows Active Directory workstation IP verification	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IP change detection via DNS lookup	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable NTLMv1 in client authentication to Windows AD server	

### Maximum concurrent user sessions

Enter the maximum number of concurrent FSSO login sessions a user is allowed to have. Use **0** for unlimited.

Select **Configure Per User/Group** to configure the maximum number of concurrent sessions for each user or group. See [Fine-grained controls on page 1](#).

### Log level

Select one of **Debug**, **Info**, **Warning**, or **Error** as the minimum severity level of events to log from the dropdown menu.

Select **Download all logs** to download all FSSO logs to your management computer.

### Enable Windows event log polling (e.g. domain controllers/Exchange servers)

Select to enable Windows AD polling.

Select to enable polling additional logon events, including from devices using Kerberos authentication or from Mac OS X systems, and from event IDs 672, 680, 4776, and 4768.

<b>Enable polling additional logon events</b>	<p>When additional AD logon event IDs are enabled, event IDs 528, 540, and 4624 are also polled. These event are generated when a user attempts to access a domain service or resource. When a user logs off from the workstation, such an event will be generated.</p> <p>Enter the additional logon event timeout time in the <b>Additional logon event timeout</b> field, from 1 to 480 minutes, with 5 minutes being the default time.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> After a user logs off, their SSO session will stay active for the above configured period of time. During this time, if another user changes to the previous user's IP address, they may be able to bypass the necessary authentication. For this reason, it is strongly recommended that the timeout time be kept short.</p>
<b>Enable DNS lookup to get IP from workstation name</b>	Select to use DNS lookup to get IP address information when an event contains only the workstation name. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Directly use domain DNS suffix in lookup</b>	Select to use the domain DNS suffix when doing a DNS lookup. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Enable reverse DNS lookup to get workstation name from IP</b>	Select to enable reverse DNS lookup. Reverse DNS lookup is used when an event contains only an IP address and no workstation name. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Do one more DNS lookup to get full list of IPs after reverse lookup of workstation name</b>	Reverse DNS lookup is used when an event contains only an IP address and no workstation name. Once the workstation name is determined, it is used in the DNS lookup again to get more complete IP address information. This is useful in environments where workstations have multiple network interfaces. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Include account name ending with \$ (usually computer account)</b>	Accounts that end in "\$" used to exclusively denote computer accounts with no actual user, but in some cases, valid accounts imported from dated systems can feature them. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Enable Radius Accounting SSO clients</b>	Select to enable the detection of users sign-ons and sign-offs from incoming RADIUS accounting (Start, Stop, and Interim-Update) records.
<b>Use RADIUS realm as Windows Active Directory domain</b>	Select to use the RADIUS realm as the Windows AD domain.
<b>Enable Syslog SSO</b>	Select to enable Syslog SSO, and configure syslog sources.

<b>Enable FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent Service</b>	Select to enable single sign-on (SSO) by clients running FortiClient Endpoint Security. For more information, see <a href="#">FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent on page 1</a> .
<b>FortiClient listening port</b>	Enter the FortiClient listening port number.
<b>Enable authentication</b>	Select to enable authentication, then enter a secret key, or password, in the <b>Secret key</b> field.
<b>Keep-alive interval</b>	Enter the duration between keep-alive transmissions, from 1 to 60 minutes. Default is 5 minutes.
<b>Idle timeout</b>	Enter an amount of time in minutes after which to logoff a user if their status is not updated. The value cannot be lower than the <b>Keep-alive interval</b> value.
<b>Enable NTLM</b>	<p>Select to enable the NT LAN Manager (NTLM) to allow logon of users who are connected to a domain that does not have the FSSO DC Agent installed. Disable NTLM authentication only if your network does not support NTLM authentication for security or other reasons.</p> <p>Enter an amount of time after which NTLM authentication expires in the <b>NTLM authentication expiry</b> field, from 1 to 10080 minutes (7 days).</p>
<b>Enable hierarchical FSSO tiering</b>	Select to enable hierarchical FSSO tiering. Enter the collector listening port in the <b>Collector listening port</b> field.
<b>Enable DC/TS Agent Clients</b>	<p>Select to enable clients using DC or TS Agent. Enter the UDP port in the <b>DC/TS Agent listening port</b> field. Default is 8002.</p> <p>Select <b>Enable authentication</b> to enable authentication, then enter a secret key, or password, in the <b>Secret key</b> field.</p>
<b>Restrict auto-discovered domain controllers to configured Windows event log sources</b>	Select to enable restricting automatically discovered domain controllers to already configured domain controllers only. See <a href="#">Domain controllers on page 1</a> .
<b>Enable Windows Active Directory workstation IP verification</b>	<p>Select to enable workstation IP verification with Windows Active Directory.</p> <p>If enabled, select <b>Enable IP change detection via DNS lookup</b> to detect IP changes via DNS lookup.</p>
<b>Disable NTLMv1 in client authentication to Windows AD server</b>	Optionally disable NTLMv1, as NTLMv2 is supported.

4. In the **User Group Membership** section, configure the following settings:

User Group Membership	
Group cache mode:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Passive <input type="radio"/> Active
Group cache item lifetime:	<input type="text" value="480"/> minutes (30-10080) <button>Clear cache</button>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Do not use cached groups and always load groups from server for the following SSO sources:	
<input type="checkbox"/> Windows event log polling	
<input type="checkbox"/> RADIUS Accounting SSO	
<input type="checkbox"/> Syslog SSO	
<input type="checkbox"/> FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent	
<input type="checkbox"/> DC Agent	
<input type="checkbox"/> TS Agent	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User login portal	
<input type="checkbox"/> SSO web service	
Base distinguished names to search for nesting of users/groups into cross domain, domain local groups:	<div></div>

<b>Group cache mode</b>	Select the group cache mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Passive:</b> Items have an expiry time after which they are removed and re-queried on the next logon.</li> <li>• <b>Active:</b> Items are periodically updated for all currently logged on users.</li> </ul>
<b>Group cache item lifetime</b>	Enter the amount of time in minutes between 30-10080 (maximum of one week) after which items will expire (when <b>Group cache mode</b> is set to <b>Passive</b> ), or the amount of time after which items will update for active logins (when <b>Group cache mode</b> is set to <b>Active</b> ). <p>Additionally, you can <b>Clear cache</b> (when in <b>Passive</b>), or manually <b>Update cache</b> (when in <b>Active</b>).</p>

**Do not use cached groups and always load groups from server for the following SSO sources**

Select to prevent using cached groups and to always load groups from server for the following SSO sources:

- **Windows event log polling**
- **RADIUS Accounting SSO**
- **Syslog SSO**
- **FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent**
- **DC Agent**
- **TS Agent**
- **User login portal**
- **SSO web service**

**Base distinguished names to search for nesting of users/groups into cross domain, domain local groups**

Enter the base distinguished names to search for nesting of users or groups into cross domain and domain local groups.

5. Select **OK** to apply the settings.

## Configuring FortiGate units for FSSO

Each FortiGate unit that will use FortiAuthenticator to provide Single Sign-On authentication must be configured to use FortiAuthenticator as an SSO server.

### To configure SSO authentication on the FortiGate unit:

1. On the FortiGate unit, go to **User & Device > Authentication > Single Sign-On** and select **Create New**.
2. In the **Type** field, select **Fortinet Single-Sign-On Agent**.
3. Enter a name for FortiAuthenticator in the **Name** field.
4. In the **Primary Agent IP/Name** field, enter the IP address of FortiAuthenticator.
5. In the **Password** field, enter the secret key that you defined for FortiAuthenticator. See [Enable authentication on page 138](#).
6. Select **OK**.

In a few minutes, the FortiGate unit receives a list of user groups from FortiAuthenticator. When you open the server, you can see the list of groups. The groups can be used in identity-based security policies.

## Portal services

The SSO portal supports a logon widget that you can embed in any web page. Typically, an organization would embed the widget on its home page.

The SSO portal sets a cookie on the user's browser. When the user browses to a page containing the login widget, FortiAuthenticator recognizes the user and updates its database if the user's IP address has changed. The user will not need to re-authenticate until the login timeout expires, which can be up to 30 days. To log out of FSSO immediately, the user can select the **Logout** button in the widget.

The SSO portal supports multiple authentication methods including manual authentication, embeddable widgets, and Kerberos authentication.

To configure portal services, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > Portal Services**.

**Edit Portal Services Settings**

**User Portal**

☒ **Enable SSO on login portal**

Realms:	Realm	User Source	SSO
	local (default realm)	Local users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Enable</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable for users from selected local user groups only: <a href="#">[Edit]</a>

[Configure realms](#)

**Login timeout:**  minutes (1-10080)

**Maximum delay when redirecting to an external URL:**  seconds (1-10)

**Embeddable login widget:**

<iframe src="https://fac.school.net/modules/login/" width="250" height="30" frameborder="0" scrolling="no" style="padding: 5px;"></iframe>

**Login widget demo:**

**Kerberos User Portal**

☐ **Enable Kerberos login for SSO** [\[Import keytab and enable\]](#)

**Kerberos Principal:**

**SSO Web Service**

☒ **Enable SSO Web Service**

**SSO user type:**

☒ External ⓘ  
☐ Local users ⓘ  
☐ Remote users ⓘ

[ Please Select ] ▼

The following settings can be configured:

<b>User Portal</b>	Select <b>Enable SSO on login portal</b> to enable the SSO login portal.
<b>Realms</b>	Add realms to which the client will be associated. See <a href="#">Realms on page 1</a> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a realm from the dropdown menu in the <b>Realm</b> column.</li> <li>Select whether or not to allow local users to override remote users for the selected realm.</li> <li>Select whether or not to use Windows AD domain authentication.</li> <li>Edit and filter users based on the groups they are in.</li> <li>If necessary, add more realms to the list.</li> <li>Select the realm that will be the default realm for this client.</li> </ul>
<b>Login timeout</b>	Set the maximum number of minutes a user is allowed to stay logged in before being logged out automatically from SSO, between 1-10080 (maximum of one week, set by default).



<b>Maximum delay when redirecting to an external URL</b>	Set the delay in seconds that occurs when redirecting to an external URL, between 1-10 seconds, with a default of 7 seconds.
<b>Embeddable login widget</b>	Use this code to embed the login widget onto your site. The code in the field cannot be manually edited.
<b>Login widget demo</b>	A demo of what the login widget will look like on your site.
<b>Kerberos User Portal</b>	Select <b>Enable Kerberos login for SSO</b> to enable kerberos log in for SSO. See <a href="#">Kerberos on page 145</a> for more information.
<b>Import keytab and enable</b>	Select to open the <b>Import Keytab</b> window where you can import a keytab from your computer.  A keytab must be imported for Kerberos log in for SSO to be enabled.
<b>Kerberos Principal</b>	View the Kerberos principal.
<b>SSO Web Service</b>	Select <b>Enable SSO Web Service</b> to use the web service to log users in and out.
<b>SSO user type</b>	Specify the type of user that the client will provide: external, local, or remote (LDAP server must be selected from the dropdown menu).

## Kerberos

Kerberos authentication allows the FortiAuthenticator to identify connecting users through a Kerberos exchange after a redirect from a FortiGate device.

A keytab file that describes your Kerberos infrastructure is required. To generate this file, you can use a ktpass utility. The following code can be used in a batch file to simplify the keytab file creation:

```
set OUTFILE=FortiAuthenticator.keytab
set USERNAME=FortiAuthenticator@corp.example.com

set PRINC=HTTP/FortiAuthenticator.corp.example.com@CORP.EXAMPLE.COM
set CRYPTO=all

set PASSWD=Pa$$p0rt
set PTYPE=KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL

ktpass -out %OUTFILE% -pass %PASSWD% -mapuser %USERNAME% -princ %PRINC% -crypto %CRYPTO% -
ptype %PTYPE%
```

The FortiGate device can be configured to redirect unauthenticated users to the FortiAuthenticator, however the Kerberos authentication URL is different than the standard login URL. The Custom Message HTML for the Login Page HTML Redirect for Kerberos is as follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML>
```

```

<html lang="en-US">
  <head>
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
    <meta http-equiv="refresh" content="1;url=http://<FortiAuthenticator-
      fqdn>/login/kerb-auth?user_continue_url=%%PROTURI%%">
    <script type="text/javascript">
      window.location.href = http://<FortiAuthenticator-fqdn>/login/kerb-auth?user_
        continue_url=%%PROTURI%%
    </script>
    <title>
      Page Redirection
    </title>
  </head>
  <body>
    If you are not redirected automatically, click on the link
    <a href='http://<FortiAuthenticator-fqdn>/login/kerb-auth?user_continue_
      url=%%PROTURI%%'>
      http://<FortiAuthenticator-fqdn>/login/kerb-auth?user_continue_url= %%PROTURI%%
    </a>
  </body>
</html>

```

## SAML authentication

Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) is an XML standard that allows for maintaining a single repository for authentication amongst internal and/or external systems.

The FortiAuthenticator can act as a Service Provider (SP) to request user identity information from a third-party Identity Provider (IDP). This information can then be used to sign the user on transparently based on what information the IDP sends.

In this scenario:

1. A user attempts to connect to the Internet via FortiGate.
2. The user is not authenticated in FSSO so gets redirected to FortiAuthenticator.
3. FortiAuthenticator (a service provider) checks with the existing third-party IDP to get the user identity.
4. FortiAuthenticator pushes identity and group information into FSSO.
5. FortiAuthenticator redirects the user to the original URL.
6. FortiGate sees the user in FSSO and allows the user to pass.

To configure SAML Portal settings, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > SAML Authentication**.

The following options are available:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new SAML identity provider.
<b>Import</b>	Import a SAML identity provider from a file.
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected SAML identity provider.
<b>Edit</b>	Edit the selected SAML identity provider.

To configure a new SAML identity provider, select **Create New**.

The following settings can be configured:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a Name for the New SAML Identity Provider
<b>Description</b>	Enter a Description for the New SAML Identity Provider
<b>Device FQDN</b>	Enter the FQDN of the configured device from the system dashboard.
<b>URL Nomenclature</b>	<p>Select the method to determine the URL path of the SAML identity provider.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Individualize:</b> Enable to include the name of the SAML identity provider in the URL path.</li> <li>• <b>Legacy:</b> Enable to set the URL to a predetermined URL path. Note that Legacy can only be enabled for one of the configured SAML identity providers.</li> </ul>
<b>Portal URL</b>	<p>Enter the Portal URL, for example:</p> <p><code>http://www.example.com/login/saml-auth</code></p>
<b>Entity ID</b>	<p>Enter the Entity ID, for example:</p> <p><code>http://www.example.com/metadata/</code></p>
<b>ACS (login) URL</b>	<p>Enter the Assertion Consumer Service (ACS) login URL, for example:</p> <p><code>https://www.example.com/saml/?acs</code></p>
<b>Download SP metadata</b>	Select to load the service provider SAMLv2 metadata, which will be used for exchanging data with remote parties. All SAMLv2 protocol URLs will be recognized.
<b>Import IDP certificate</b>	Select to import the certificate of the identity provider.
<b>IDP entity ID</b>	<p>Also known as the entity descriptor. Enter the unique name of the SAML identity provider, typically an absolute URL:</p> <p><code>https://idp_name.example.edu/idp</code></p>
<b>IDP single sign-on URL</b>	Enter the identity provider portal URL you wish to use for SSO.

<b>IDP certificate fingerprint</b>	<p>Enter the fingerprint of the certificate file. To calculate the fingerprint, you can use OpenSSL.</p> <p>Use the following OpenSSL command:</p> <pre>\$ openssl x509 -noout -fingerprint -in "server.crt"</pre> <p>Example result, showing the fingerprint:</p> <pre>SHA1 Fingerprint=AF:E7:1C:28:EF:74:0B:C8:74:25:BE:13:A2:26:3D:37 :97:1D:A1:F9</pre>
<b>Sign SAML requests with a local certificate</b>	Select to choose a local SAML certificate.
<b>End user must agree to a disclaimer before proceeding to the authentication</b>	<p>Select to require a SAML SP SSO end-user to agree to a disclaimer before being redirected to the SAML IdP for authentication.</p> <p>The Login Disclaimer Page and Disclaimer Denied Page can be customized. See <a href="#">Replacement messages on page 97</a> for more information.</p>
<b>Enable SAML single logout</b>	Select to enable <b>SLS (logout) URL</b> and set <b>IDP single logout URL</b> .
<b>Obtain group membership from</b>	<p>Most SAML IdP services will return the username in the Subject NameID assertion, however not all IdP services are consistent. FSSO requires group membership of each user with an active SSO session while different SAML IdP services require different methods of retrieving the group information. Before now, group information could only be obtained from very specific (hardcoded) SAML assertions. You can now choose to convert Azure's group membership UUIDs into names, retrieve group membership from an LDAP service, or configure other assertions which can be used in group membership retrieval.</p> <p>Select the method to extract usernames:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SAML assertions:</b> Enable and choose whether usernames are pulled in from boolean assertions or text-based attributes.</li> <li>• <b>Azure:</b> Enable and enter the <b>Username field</b> and <b>Groups field</b>. If <b>Convert Azure UUIDs into names</b> is enabled, you must have already created an SSO group with the Azure UUID already added. To save time, administrators may instead choose to import them directly from Azure.</li> <li>• <b>LDAP lookup:</b> Enable and select the LDAP server to pull group memberships.</li> </ul>
<b>Implicit group membership</b>	Select which local group the retrieved SAML users are placed into.

## Windows event log sources

FortiAuthenticator must be configured to communicate with the domain controller if Active Directory (AD) will be used to ascertain group information.

A domain controller entry can be disabled without deleting its configuration. This can be useful when performing testing and troubleshooting, or when moving controllers within your network.



In order to properly discover the available domains and domain controllers, the DNS settings must specify a DNS server that can provide the IP addresses of the domain controllers. See [DNS on page 1](#).

### To add a domain controller:

1. Go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > Windows Event Log Sources**.
2. Select **Create New** to open the **Create New Windows Event Log Source** window.

**Create New Windows Event Log Source**

NetBIOS name:	<input type="text"/>
Display name:	<input type="text"/>
IP:	<input type="text"/>
Account:	<input type="text"/>
Password:	<input type="password"/>
Server type:	Domain controller <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Disable	
<b>LDAP Lookup</b>	
Priority:	Primary <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable secure connection	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

3. Enter the following information:

<b>NetBIOS name</b>	Name of the domain controller as it appears in NetBIOS.
<b>Display name</b>	Unique name to easily identify this domain controller.
<b>IP</b>	Network IP address of the controller.
<b>Account</b>	Account name used to access logon events. This account should have administrator rights.
<b>Password</b>	Password for the above account.

<b>Server type</b>	Select either <b>Domain controller</b> or <b>Exchange server</b> as the server type.
<b>Disable</b>	Disable the domain controller without losing any of its settings.
<b>Priority</b>	Define multiple domain controllers for the same domain. Each can be designated as <b>Primary</b> or <b>Secondary</b> . The <b>Primary</b> unit is accessed first.
<b>Enable secure connection</b>	Enable a secure connection over either <b>LDAPS</b> or <b>STARTTLS</b> with a <b>CA certificate</b> .

4. Select **OK**.

By default, FortiAuthenticator uses auto-discovery of Domain Controllers. If you want to restrict operation to the configured domain controllers only, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > General** and enable **Restrict auto-discovered domain controllers to configured Windows event log sources**. See [General settings on page 1](#).

## RADIUS accounting

If required, SSO can be based on RADIUS accounting records. The FortiAuthenticator receives RADIUS accounting packets from a carrier RADIUS server or network device, such as a wireless controller, collects additional group information, and then inserts it into FSSO to be used by multiple FortiGate devices for identity based policies.

The FortiAuthenticator must be configured as a RADIUS accounting client to the RADIUS server.

To view the RADIUS accounting SSO client list, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > RADIUS Accounting Sources**.

### To configure and enable a RADIUS accounting client:

1. From the RADIUS accounting SSO client list, select **Create New**. The **Create New RADIUS Accounting SSO Client** window opens.

**Create New RADIUS Accounting SSO Client**

Name:	<input type="text"/>		
Client name/IP:	<input type="text"/>		
Secret:	<input type="text"/>		
Description:	<input type="text"/>		
SSO user type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> External <small>?</small> <input type="radio"/> Local users <small>?</small> <input type="radio"/> Remote users <small>?</small> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">[ Please Select ]</span>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Strip off prefix or suffix from username if any			

**RADIUS Attributes**

Username attribute:	<input type="text" value="User-Name"/>	<a href="#">[Browse]</a>	<a href="#">[Default]</a>
Client IPv4 attribute:	<input type="text" value="Calling-Station-Id"/>	<a href="#">[Browse]</a>	<a href="#">[Default]</a>
Client IPv6 attribute:	<input type="text" value="Framed-IPv6-Address"/>	<a href="#">[Browse]</a>	<a href="#">[Default]</a>
User group attribute:	<input type="text" value="Fortinet-Group-Name"/>	<a href="#">[Browse]</a>	<a href="#">[Default]</a>

- Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name in the <b>Name</b> field to identify the RADIUS accounting client on the FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Client name/IP</b>	Enter the RADIUS accounting client's FQDN or IP address.
<b>Secret</b>	Enter the RADIUS accounting client's pre-shared key.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter a description of the client.
<b>SSO user type</b>	Specify the type of user that the client will provide: external, local, or remote (LDAP server must be selected from the dropdown menu).
<b>Strip off prefix or suffix from username if any</b>	Enable to strip prefixes and suffixes from the SSO usernames.
<b>RADIUS Attributes</b>	If required, customize the username, client IP, and user group RADIUS attributes to match the ones used in the incoming RADIUS accounting records. See <a href="#">RADIUS attributes on page 1</a> .

- Select **OK** to apply the changes.
- Enable RADIUS accounting SSO clients by going to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > General** and selecting **Enable RADIUS Accounting SSO clients**. See [General settings on page 1](#).

## Syslog

The FortiAuthenticator can parse username and IP address information from a syslog feed from a third-party device, and inject this information into FSSO so it can be used in FortiGate identity based policies.

Syslog objects include sources and matching rules. Sources identify the entities sending the syslog messages, and matching rules extract the events from the syslog messages. Messages coming from non-configured sources will be dropped.



Injection of IPv6 addresses using Syslog-to-FSSO and API-to-FSSO is supported. IPv6 addresses will be accepted by the backend parsing engine.

To configure syslog objects, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > Syslog Sources**.



Syslog SSO must be enabled for this menu option to be available. Go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > General** to enable Syslog SSO. See [General settings on page 1](#).

The following options and information are available:

<b>Create New</b>	Create a new syslog source or matching rule.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected object or objects.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected object.
<b>View</b>	Select <b>Syslog Sources</b> or <b>Matching Rules</b> from the dropdown menu.
<b>Name</b>	The name of the source or rule.
<b>Client name/IP</b>	The IP address or the client.

## Syslog sources

Each syslog source must be defined for traffic to be accepted by the syslog daemon. Each source must also be configured with a matching rule (either pre-defined or custom built; see below), and syslog service must be enabled on the network interface(s) that will listen to remote syslog traffic.



**To add a new syslog source:**

1. In the syslog list, select **Syslog Sources** from the **View** dropdown menu.
2. Select **Create New**. The **Create New Syslog Source** page opens.
3. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the source.
<b>IP address</b>	Enter the IP address of the source.
<b>Matching rule</b>	Select the requisite matching rule from the dropdown menu. A matching must already be created for the source.
<b>SSO user type</b>	Select the SSO user type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>External:</b> Users are not defined on the FortiAuthenticator and user groups come from the source.</li><li>• <b>Local users:</b> Users are defined on the FortiAuthenticator as local users, and user groups are retrieved from the local groups. Any group from the syslog messages will be ignored.</li><li>• <b>Remote users:</b> Users are defined on a remote LDAP server and user groups are retrieved from the LDAP server. Any group from the syslog messages will be ignored.</li></ul>
<b>Strip off prefix or suffix from username if any</b>	Enable to strip prefixes and suffixes from the SSO usernames.

4. Select **OK** to add the source.

## Matching rules

A matching rule is a query, or policy, that is applied to a syslog message in order to determine required information, such as the username and IP address. Rules are required for every syslog source.

Predefined rules are available for Fortinet's FortiNAC appliance, and Aruba and Cisco wireless controllers (see [Predefined rules on page 154](#)). For other systems, custom policies can be created to parse message files in various formats.

## Predefined rules

Predefined matching rules are included for Fortinet's FortiNAC appliance, and Aruba and Cisco ACS or ISE wireless controllers.

### FortiNAC

<b>Trigger</b>	FSSO
<b>Auth Type Indicators</b>	<b>Logon:</b> login <b>Logoff:</b> logout
<b>Username field</b>	username={{:username}}
<b>Client IPv4 field</b>	IP={{:client_ip}}
<b>Client IPv6 field</b>	e.g. Framed-IPv6-Address={{:client_ipv6}}, :
<b>Group field</b>	tags="{{:group}}"
<b>Group list separator</b>	SSO syslog feed can parse multiple groups if the names are separated by a plus (+) symbol or a comma (,).

### Aruba

<b>Trigger</b>	None; any logs are accepted.
<b>Auth Type Indicators</b>	<b>Logon:</b> User Authentication Successful (exact match required; no delimiter or value)
<b>Username field</b>	username={{:username}}
<b>Client IPv4 field</b>	IP={{:client_ip}}
<b>Client IPv6 field</b>	e.g. Framed-IPv6-Address={{:client_ipv6}}, :
<b>Group field</b>	AAA profile={{:group}}
<b>Group list separator</b>	SSO syslog feed can parse multiple groups if the names are separated by a plus (+) symbol or a comma (,).

### Cisco

<b>Trigger</b>	NOTICE Radius-Accounting
----------------	--------------------------

<b>Auth Type Indicators</b>	<b>Logon:</b> Acct-Status-Type=Start <b>Update:</b> Acct-Status-Type=Interim <b>Logoff:</b> Acct-Status-Type=Stop
<b>Username field</b>	User-Name={{:username}},
<b>Client IPv4 field</b>	Framed-IP-Address={{:client_ip}},
<b>Client IPv6 field</b>	e.g. Framed-IPv6-Address={{:client_ipv6}},:
<b>Group field</b>	e.g. profile={{:group}}
<b>Group list separator</b>	SSO syslog feed can parse multiple groups if the names are separated by a plus (+) symbol or a comma (,).

#### To create a new matching rule:

1. In the syslog list, select **Matching Rules** from the **View** dropdown menu.
2. Select **Create New**. The **Create New Syslog Matching Rule** page opens.
3. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the source.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally enter a description of the rule.
<b>Fields to Extract</b>	Configure the fields that are to be extracted from the message.
<b>Trigger</b>	Optionally, enter a string that must be present in all syslog messages. This will act as a pre-filter.
<b>Auth Type Indicators</b>	Enter strings to differentiate between the types of user activities: <b>Logon</b> , <b>Update</b> (optional), and <b>Logoff</b> (optional).
<b>Username field</b>	Define the semantics of the username field. For example: User-Name={{:username}}, where {{:username}} indicates where the username is extracted from.
<b>Client IPv4 field</b>	Define the semantics of the client IPv4 address.
<b>Client IPv6 field</b>	Define the semantics of the client IPv6 address.
<b>Group field</b>	<p>Optionally, define the semantics of the group. The group may not always be included in the syslog message, and may need to be retrieved from a remote LDAP server.</p> <p>Use the <b>Group list separator</b> to specify the separator.</p>
<b>Test Rule</b>	Paste a sample log message into the text box, then select <b>Test</b> to test that the desired fields are correctly extracted.

4. Select **OK** to add the new matching rule.

## Fine-grained controls

The **Fine-grained Controls** menu provides options to include or exclude a user or group from SSO, and set the maximum number of concurrent sessions that a user or group can have.

To adjust the controls, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > Fine-grained Controls**.

The following options are available:

<b>Edit</b>	Edit the selected user's or group's settings.
<b>Clear Configuration</b>	Clear the SSO configuration for the selected users or groups.
<b>Exclude from SSO</b>	Select a user or users, then select <b>Exclude from SSO</b> to exclude them from SSO.
<b>Include in SSO</b>	Select a user or users, then select <b>Include in SSO</b> to include the selected users in SSO.
<b>SSO Type</b>	Select the SSO type to view from the dropdown menu. The options are: <b>Local Users</b> , <b>Local Groups</b> , <b>SSO Users</b> , and <b>SSO Groups</b> .
<b>SSO Name</b>	The users' or groups' names. Select the column title to sort the list by this column.
<b>Maximum Concurrent Sessions</b>	The maximum concurrent sessions allowed for the user or group. This number cannot be greater than five.
<b>Excluded from SSO</b>	If the user or group is excluded from SSO, a red circle with a line will be displayed.

To edit an SSO user or group:

1. In the **Fine-grained Controls** window, select the SSO user or group that is being edited then select **Edit**. The **Edit SSO Fine-grained Control Item** window opens.
2. Enter the maximum number of concurrent SSO logon sessions per user that the user or group is allowed to have. Enter **0** for unlimited. The value must be less than or equal to five.
3. If the SSO item is a user, select **Exclude from SSO** and select either **Do not affect current user when excluded user logs in** or **Logoff current user when excluded user logs in**.
4. Select **OK** to apply the changes.

## SSO users and groups

To manage SSO users and groups, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > SSO Users** or **SSO Groups**.

The following options are available:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new user or group.  In the <b>Create New SSO User</b> or <b>Create New SSO Group</b> window, enter a name for the user or group, then select <b>OK</b> .
<b>Import</b>	Import SSO users or groups from a remote LDAP server.
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected users or groups.
<b>Edit</b>	Edit the selected user or group.
<b>Name</b>	The SSO user or group names.
<b>Created/Imported</b>	Displays whether or not the user or user group was created or imported.

FortiAuthenticator SSO user groups cannot be used directly in a security policy on a FortiGate device. An FSSO user group must be created on the FortiGate unit, then the FortiAuthenticator SSO groups must be added to it. FortiGate FSSO user groups are available for selection in identity-based security policies. See the [FortiOS Handbook](#) for more information.

### To import SSO users or groups:

1. In the **SSO Users** or **SSO Groups** list, select **Import**.
  - In the **Import SSO Users** or **Import SSO Groups** window, select whether to import the **DN** or **Username**, and select a remote LDAP server from the **Remote LDAP Server** dropdown menu, then select **Browse**.
  - In the **Import SSO Groups** window, select a remote LDAP server from the **Remote LDAP Server** dropdown menu and select **Browse**. Alternatively, select **Azure ADFS** and specify the **Graph API Service Root**, **Client ID**, and **Client key**.



An LDAP server must already be configured to select it in the dropdown menu. See [LDAP service on page 1](#) for more information on adding a remote LDAP server.

The **Import SSO Users** or **Import SSO Groups** window opens in a new browser window.

2. Optionally, enter a **Filter** string to reduce the number of entries returned, and then select **Apply**, or select **Clear** to clear the filters.  
For example, `uid=j*` returns only user IDs beginning with "j".
3. The default configuration imports the attributes commonly associated with Microsoft Active Directory LDAP implementations. Select **Configure user attributes** to edit the remote LDAP user mapping attributes.  
Selecting the field, **FirstName** for example, presents a list of attributes which have been detected and can be selected. This list is not exhaustive; other non-displayed attributes may be available for import. Consult your LDAP administrator for a list of available attributes.
4. Select the entries you want to import.
5. Optionally, select an organization from the **Organization** drop-down to associated the imported users with a specific organization. See [Organizations on page 1](#).
6. Select **OK** to import the users or groups.

## FortiGate filtering

If you are providing FSSO to only certain groups on a remote LDAP server, you can filter the polling information so that it includes only those groups, or organizational units (OU).

To view a list of the FortiGate group filters, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > FortiGate Filtering**.

### To create a new filter:

1. From the FortiGate filters select **Create New**.  
The **Create New FortiGate Filter** window opens.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name in the <b>Name</b> field to identify the filter.
<b>FortiGate name/IP</b>	Enter the FortiGate unit's FQDN or IP address.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter a description of the filter.
<b>IP Filtering</b>	<p>Select to enable IP filtering for this service.</p> <p>Choose the desired IP filtering rules from the <b>Available IP filtering rules</b> box and move them to the <b>Selected IP filtering rules</b> box.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you have not yet configured IP filtering rules, you can select the <b>[Create new rule]</b> option in the <b>Available IP filtering rules</b> box, or create them under <b>Fortinet SSO Methods &gt; SSO &gt; IP Filtering Rules</b> (see <a href="#">IP filtering rules on page 1</a> for more information).</p>

**Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)**

Select to enable forwarding FSSO information for users from only the specific subset of users, groups, or containers.

Select **Create New** under **SSO Filtering Objects**, enter a name to identify the policy, and select from the following object types:

- **Group:** Specifies the DN of a group. All users who are members of that group must be included in SSO.
- **Group container:** Specifies the DN of an LDAP container, e.g. OU. All users who are members of a group under that container or one of its sub-containers must be included in SSO.
- **User:** Specifies the DN of a user. This user must be included in SSO.
- **User container:** Specifies the DN of an LDAP container, e.g. OU. All users who are under that container or one of its sub-containers must be included in SSO.
- **User and group container:** Specifies the DN of an LDAP container, e.g. OU. It is the union of the user and the group containers.

You can also use the **Import** option to import an existing object.

3. Select **OK** to create the new FortiGate group filter.

## IP filtering rules

The user logon information sent to FortiGate units can be restricted to specific IP addresses or address ranges. If no filters are defined, information is sent for all addresses.

Once created, IP filtering rules must be assigned to FortiGate filters under **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > FortiGate Filtering** (see [FortiGate group filtering on page 1](#) for more information).

To view the list of the IP filtering rules, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > IP Filtering Rules**.

### To create new IP filtering rules:

1. From the IP filtering rules list, select **Create New**. The **Create New IP Filtering Rule** window opens.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the rule.
<b>Filter Mode</b>	Either <b>Include</b> or <b>Exclude</b> the defined IPs in SSO.
<b>Filter Type</b>	Select whether the rule will specify an IPv4 address and netmask, an IPv6 address range, or an IPv6 address.
<b>Rule</b>	<p>Enter either an IP address and netmask or an IP address range (depending on the selected filter type). For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPv4 address/mask: 10.0.0.1/255.255.255.0</li> <li>• IP range: 10.0.0.1/10.0.0.99</li> <li>• IPv6: 2001:db8:1ced:f00d::/128</li> </ul>

3. Select **OK** to create the new IP filtering rule.

## Tiered architecture

Tier nodes can be managed by going to **Fortinet SSO Methods > SSO > Tiered Architecture**. A maximum of five tier nodes can be configured.

The following options are available:

<b>Create New</b>	Select to create a new tier node.
<b>Delete</b>	Select to delete the selected node or nodes.
<b>Edit</b>	Select to edit the selected node.
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term to search the tier node list.
<b>Name</b>	The node name.
<b>Tier Role</b>	The node's tier role, either <b>Collector</b> or <b>Supplier</b> .
<b>Address</b>	The IP address of the node.
<b>Port</b>	The collector port number. Only applicable if <b>Tier Role</b> is <b>Collector</b> .
<b>Serial Number</b>	The serial number or numbers.
<b>Enabled</b>	If the node is enabled, a green circle with a check mark will be shown. A node can be disabled without losing any of its settings.

### To add a new tier node:

1. From the tier node list, select **Create New**. The **Create New Tier Node** window opens.

2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name to identify the node.
-------------	------------------------------------



<b>Serial number</b>	Enter the device serial number.
<b>Alternate serial number</b>	Optionally, enter a second, or alternate, serial number for an HA cluster member.
<b>Tier role</b>	Select the tier node role, either <b>Supplier</b> or <b>Collector</b> .
<b>Node IP address</b>	Enter the IP address for the supplier or collector.
<b>Collector Port</b>	Enter the collector port number. Default is 8003. This is only available when <b>Tier role</b> is set to <b>Collector</b> .
<b>Disable</b>	Disable the node without losing any of its settings.

3. Select **OK** to create the new tier node.

## FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent

The FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent is a feature of FortiClient Endpoint Security. The agent automatically provides user name and IP address information to FortiAuthenticator for transparent authentication. IP address changes, such as those due to WiFi roaming, are automatically sent to the FortiAuthenticator. When the user logs off or otherwise disconnects from the network, FortiAuthenticator is aware of this and deauthenticates the user.

The **FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent Service** must be enabled. See [Enable FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent Service on page 1](#).

For information on configuring FortiClient, see the [FortiClient Administration Guide](#) for your device.

## Fake client protection

Some attacks are based on a user authenticating to an unauthorized AD server in order to spoof a legitimate user logon through the FortiClient SSO Mobility Agent. You can prevent this type of attack by enabling NTLM authentication (see [Enable NTLM on page 1](#)).

FortiAuthenticator will initiate NTLM authentication with the client, proxying the communications only to the legitimate AD servers it is configured to use.

If NTLM is enabled, FortiAuthenticator requires NTLM authentication when:

- the user logs on to a workstation for the first time,
- the user logs off and then logs on again,
- the workstation IP address changes,
- the workstation user changes,
- and NTLM authentication expires (user configurable).

# RADIUS Single Sign-On

A FortiGate or FortiMail unit can transparently identify users who have already authenticated on an external RADIUS server by parsing RADIUS accounting records. However, this approach has potential difficulties:

- The RADIUS server is business-critical IT infrastructure, limiting the changes that can be made to the server configuration.
- In some cases, the server can send accounting records only to a single endpoint. Some network topologies may require multiple endpoints.

The FortiAuthenticator RADIUS accounting proxy overcomes these limitations by proxying the RADIUS accounting records, modifying them, and replicating them to the multiple subscribing endpoints as needed.

## RADIUS accounting proxy

The FortiAuthenticator receives RADIUS accounting packets from a carrier RADIUS server, transforms them, and forwards them to multiple FortiGate or FortiMail devices for use in RADIUS Single Sign-On (RSSO). This differs from the packet use of RADIUS accounting ([RADIUS accounting on page 1](#)).

The accounting proxy needs to know:

- the rule sets to define or derive the RADIUS attributes that the FortiGate unit requires,
- the source of the RADIUS accounting records (i.e. the RADIUS server),
- and the destination(s) of the accounting records (i.e. the FortiGate units using this information for RSSO authentication).

## General

General RADIUS accounting proxy settings can be configured by going to **Fortinet SSO Methods > Accounting Proxy > General**.

The following settings are available:

<b>Log level</b>	Select <b>Error</b> , <b>Warning</b> , <b>Info</b> , or <b>Debug</b> as the minimum event severity level to log from the dropdown menu. The default is <b>Error</b> .
<b>Group cache lifetime</b>	Enter the amount of time after which user group memberships will expire in the cache, from 1-10080 minutes (maximum of one week). The default is <b>480</b> .
<b>Number of proxy retries</b>	Enter the number of times to retry proxy requests if they timeout, from 0-3 retries, where 0 disables retries. The default is <b>3</b> .
<b>Proxy retry timeout</b>	Enter the retry timeout period of a proxy request, from 1-10 seconds. The default is <b>5</b> .

**Statistics update period**

Enter the time between statistics updates to the seconds debug log, from 1-3600 seconds (maximum of one hour). The default is **5**.

Select **OK** to apply your changes.

## Rule sets

A rule set can contain multiple rules. Each rule can do one of the following:

- Add an attribute with a fixed value.
- Add an attribute retrieved from a user's record on an LDAP server.
- Rename an attribute to make it acceptable to the accounting proxy destination.

FortiAuthenticator can store up to 25 rule sets. You can provide both a name and description to rule sets to help identify each rule set and their purpose.

Rules access RADIUS attributes of which there are both standard attributes and vendor-specific attributes (VSAs). To select a standard attribute, select the default vendor. See [RADIUS attributes on page 1](#).

To view the accounting proxy rule set list, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > Accounting Proxy > Rule Sets**.

### To add RADIUS accounting proxy rule sets:

1. From the rule set list, select **Create New**. The **Create New Rule Set** window opens.

**Create New Rule Set**

**Name:**

**Description:**

**Rules**

**Rule: #1**✕

**Action:** Add ▼

**Attribute:**  [\[Browse\]](#)

**Value type:** Static value ▼

**Value:**

**Description:** Add attribute "[Attribute]" containing static value "[value]"

**Rule: #2**✕

**Action:** Add ▼

**Attribute:**  [\[Browse\]](#)

**Value type:** Group names ▼

**Username attribute:**  [\[Browse\]](#)

**Remote LDAP:** [ Please Select ] ▼

**Description:** Add attribute "[Attribute]" containing "Group names" from group membership of "[Username Attribute]" attribute on remote LDAP server "[server]"

+
[Add another Rule](#)

OK
Cancel

## 2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name to use when selecting this rule set for an accounting proxy destination.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter a brief description of the rule's purpose.
<b>Rules</b>	Enter one or more rules.
<b>Action</b>	<p>The action for each rule can be either <b>Add</b> or <b>Modify</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Add</b>: Add either a static value or a value derived from an LDAP server.</li> <li>• <b>Modify</b>: Rename an attribute.</li> </ul>
<b>Attribute</b>	Select <b>Browse</b> and choose the appropriate <b>Vendor</b> and <b>Attribute ID</b> in the <b>Select a RADIUS Attribute</b> dialog box.
<b>Attribute 2</b>	If <b>Action</b> is set to <b>Modify</b> , a second attribute may be selected. The first attribute will be renamed to the second attribute.
<b>Value type</b>	<p>If the action is set to <b>Add</b>, select a value type from the dropdown menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Static value</b>: Adds the attribute in the <b>Attribute</b> field containing the static value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> <li>• <b>Group names</b>: Adds attribute in the <b>Attribute</b> field containing "Group names" from the group membership of the <b>Username Attribute</b> on the remote LDAP server.</li> </ul>
<b>Value</b>	If the action is set to <b>Add</b> and <b>Value Type</b> is set to <b>Static value</b> , enter the static value.
<b>Username attribute</b>	If the action is set to <b>Add</b> , and <b>Value Type</b> is not set to <b>Static value</b> , specify an attribute that provides the user's name, or select <b>Browse</b> and choose the appropriate Vendor and Attribute ID in the <b>Select a RADIUS Attribute</b> dialog box.
<b>Remote LDAP</b>	If the attribute addition requires an LDAP server, select one from the dropdown menu. See <a href="#">LDAP on page 1</a> for information on remote LDAP servers.
<b>Description</b>	A brief description of the rule is provided.
<b>Add another Rule</b>	Select to add another rule to the rule set.

3. Select **OK** to create the new rule set.**Example rule set**

The incoming accounting packets contain the following fields:

- User-Name
- NAS-IP-Address
- Fortinet-Client-IP-Address

The outgoing accounting packets need to have these fields:

- User-Name
- NAS-IP-Address
- Fortinet-Client-IP-Address
- Session-Timeout: Value is always 3600
- Fortinet-Group-Name: Value is obtained from user's group membership on remote LDAP

The rule set needs two rules to add Session-Timeout and Fortinet-Group-Name. The following image provides an example:

The screenshot shows the 'Rules' configuration window with two rules defined:

- Rule: #1**
  - Action: Add
  - Attribute: Session-Timeout [Browse]
  - Value type: Static value
  - Value: 3600 Integer
  - Description: Add attribute "Session-Timeout" containing static value "3600"
- Rule: #2**
  - Action: Add
  - Attribute: Fortinet-Group-Name [Browse]
  - Value type: Group names
  - Username attribute: User-Name [Browse]
  - Remote LDAP: WIN2008SVR (192.168.1.2:636)
  - Description: Add attribute "Fortinet-Group-Name" containing "Group names" from group membership of "User-Name" attribute on remote LDAP server "WIN2008SVR (192.168.1.2:636)"

At the bottom, there is a link 'Add another Rule' and 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

## Sources

The RADIUS accounting proxy sources list can be viewed in **Fortinet SSO Methods > Accounting Proxy > Sources**. Sources can be added, edited, and deleted as needed. A maximum of 500 proxy sources can be configured.

### To add a RADIUS accounting proxy source:

1. From the source list, select **Create New**. The **Create New RADIUS Accounting Proxy Source** window opens.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter the name of the RADIUS server. This is used in FortiAuthenticator configurations.
<b>Source name/IP</b>	Enter the FQDN or IP address of the server.
<b>Secret</b>	Enter the pre-shared secret required to access the server.
<b>Description</b>	Optionally, enter a description of the source.

3. Select **OK** to add the RADIUS accounting proxy source.

## Destinations

The destination of the RADIUS accounting records is the FortiGate unit that will use the records to identify users. When defining the destination, you also specify the source of the records (a RADIUS client already defined as a source) and the rule set to apply to the records.

To view the RADIUS accounting proxy destinations list, go to **Fortinet SSO Methods > Accounting Proxy > Destinations**. A maximum of 500 proxy destinations can be configured.

### To add a RADIUS accounting proxy destinations:

1. From the destinations list, select **Create New**. The **Create New RADIUS Accounting Proxy Destination** window opens.
2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name to identify the destination device in your configuration.
<b>Destination name/IP</b>	Enter The FQDN or IP address of the FortiGate that will receive the RADIUS accounting records.
<b>Secret</b>	Enter the pre-shared key of the destination.
<b>Source</b>	Select a RADIUS client defined as a source from the dropdown menu. See <a href="#">Sources on page 165</a> .
<b>Rule set</b>	Select an appropriate rule set from the dropdown menu or select <b>Create New</b> to create a new rule set. See <a href="#">Rule sets on page 163</a> .

3. Select **OK** to add the RADIUS accounting proxy destination.

# Monitoring

The **Monitor** menu tree provides options for monitoring SSO and authentication activity.

## SSO

FortiAuthenticator can monitor the units that make up FSSO. This is useful to ensure there is a connection to the different components when troubleshooting.

### Domains

To monitor SSO domains, go to **Monitor > SSO > Domains**. Select **Refresh** to refresh the domain list. Select **Expand All** to expand all of the listed domains, or **Collapse All** to collapse the view.

In some instances, FSSO's performance may have been impeded by Domain Controllers that were slow to answer LDAP queries for group lookup. Because of this, new enhancements for LDAP queries have been introduced.

Mousing-over Domain Controllers and their most recent LDAP query shows the status of the query, how long ago it was, and the LDAP query's response time in milliseconds (ms). This response time will show a warning icon if the highest recent response time is above 500 ms.

In addition, you can click on the domain controller entry to view statistics for the 100-most recent LDAP queries. The listed response times will be color coordinated as follows: green for less than 500 ms, orange for between 500 and 1000 ms, and red for more than/equal to 1000 ms.

### SSO sessions

To monitor SSO sessions, go to **Monitor > SSO > SSO Sessions**. Users can be manually logged off of if required.

The following information is available:

<b>Refresh</b>	Refresh the SSO sessions list.
<b>Logoff All</b>	Log off all of the connected users.
<b>Logoff Selected</b>	Log off only the selected users.
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term in the search field, then select <b>Search</b> to search the SSO sessions list.
<b>Logon Time</b>	When the session was started.
<b>Update Time</b>	When the session was last updated.

<b>Workstation</b>	The workstation that the user is using.
<b>IP address</b>	The IP address of the workstation.
<b>Username</b>	The username of the user.
<b>Source</b>	The source of the connection.
<b>Group</b>	The group to which the user belongs.

## Windows event log sources

Windows event log sources can be viewed by going to **Monitor > SSO > Windows Event Log Sources**.

The sources list can be refreshed by selecting **Refresh**, and searched using the search field.

The list shows the total number of events, as well as the most recent event.

## FortiGates

FortiGate units that are registered with FortiAuthenticator can be viewed at **Monitor > SSO > FortiGates**.

The list can be refreshed by selecting **Refresh** and searched using the search field. The list shows the connection time of each device, as well as its IP address and serial number.

User authentication events are logged in the FortiGate event log. See the [FortiGate Handbook](#) for more information.

## DC/TS agents

Domain controller (DC) agents and terminal server (TS) agents that are registered with FortiAuthenticator can be viewed at **Monitor > SSO > DC/TS Agents**.

The list can be refreshed by selecting **Refresh** and searched using the search field.

The list shows the server name of each agent, as well as its IP address, its agent type, last connection time, connection status, and the number of logged-on users.

## NTLM statistics

Dumped NTLM statistics can be viewed at **Monitor > SSO > NTLM Statistics**.

The statistics can be refreshed and cleared by selecting **Refresh** and **Clear** respectively.

## Authentication

Locked out/inactive users, RADIUS sessions, the Windows AD server and device login sessions, and learned RADIUS users can be monitored under **Monitor > Authentication**.



## Locked-out users

To view the locked-out users, go to **Monitor > Authentication > Locked-out Users**.

To unlock a user from the list, select the user and select **Unlock**. The list can be refreshed by selecting **Refresh**, and searched using the search field.

The list shows the username, server, the reason the user was locked out, and when their lock-out expires.

For more information on locked-out users, see [Top User Lockouts widget on page 1](#), [Lockouts on page 1](#), and [User management on page 1](#).

## RADIUS sessions

FortiAuthenticator administrators can monitor RADIUS activity and log out a user if they wish.

To view currently active RADIUS accounting sessions, go to **Monitor > Authentication > RADIUS Sessions**.

The page shows the user's name, type, IP address, MAC address, and RADIUS client, duration, and data usage columns. More specifically, Accounting-Start Interim-Update packets are received. A user session is removed from this table once the Accounting-Stop packet is received, or the session doesn't receive any RADIUS accounting packets before the timeout period expires.

To log out a user as an admin, select the user from the table and select **Logoff**.

There are two pages to view: **Active** and **Cumulative**. Select **Cumulative** to view statistics for user who have a time and/or data usage limit. This information may be accumulated through a succession of RADIUS accounting sessions. A user's stats are removed when explicitly deleted by the administrator (by selecting the user and selecting **Delete**), or when the user's account itself is deleted.

While administrators can log out users, they can also reset a user's time and/or data usage using **Reset Usage**.



For more information on user time and data usage limits, see [Usage Profile](#).

---

RADIUS accounting sessions can be configured to timeout after a specific time period has been reached. To do so, see [General](#).

## Windows AD

FortiAuthenticator supports multiple Windows AD server forests, as shown below. A maximum of 20 remote LDAP servers with Windows AD enabled can be configured at once. In addition, you can see when the server was last updated, and an option to reset the connection for individual servers.

To view Windows AD server information, go to **Monitor > Authentication > Windows AD**.

Windows Active Directory Server #1	
Server name:	test
Primary IP Address:	10.10.10.10
Secondary IP address	None
Authentication Realm:	test
Agent:	running [Reset]
Connection:	connected
Updated:	49 seconds ago
Windows Active Directory Server #2	
Server name:	test2
Primary IP Address:	10.10.10.11
Secondary IP address	None
Authentication Realm:	test2
Agent:	running [Reset]
Connection:	connected
Updated:	73 seconds ago
Windows Active Directory Server #3	
Server name:	test3
Primary IP Address:	10.10.10.12
Secondary IP address	None
Authentication Realm:	test3
Agent:	running [Reset]
Connection:	connected
Updated:	49 seconds ago

To refresh the connection, select **Refresh** in the toolbar. The server name, IP address, authentication realm, agent, and connection are shown.

## Windows device logins

To view the Windows device logins, go to **Monitor > Authentication > Windows Device Logins**.

To refresh the list, select **Refresh** in the toolbar. See [Machine authentication on page 1](#) for more information.

## Learned RADIUS users

Learned RADIUS users are users that have been learned by the FortiAuthenticator after they have authenticated against a remote RADIUS server.

For information on enabling learning RADIUS users, see [RADIUS on page 1](#).

# Certificate management

This section describes managing certificates with the FortiAuthenticator device.

FortiAuthenticator can act as a CA for the creation and signing of X.509 certificates, such as server certificates for HTTPS and SSH, and client certificates for HTTPS, SSL, and IPsec VPN.

The FortiAuthenticator unit has several roles that involve certificates:

<b>Certificate authority</b>	<p>The administrator generates CA certificates that can validate the user certificates generated on this FortiAuthenticator.</p> <p>The administrator can import other authorities' CA certificates and Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs), as well as generate, sign, and revoke user certificates. See <a href="#">End entities on page 1</a> for more information.</p>
<b>SCEP server</b>	<p>A SCEP client can retrieve any of the local CA certificates (<a href="#">Local CAs on page 1</a>), and can have its own user certificate signed by the FortiAuthenticator's CA.</p>
<b>Remote LDAP authentication</b>	<p>Acting as an LDAP client, FortiAuthenticator can authenticate users against an external LDAP server. It verifies the identity of the external LDAP server by using a trusted CA certificate. See <a href="#">Trusted CAs on page 1</a> for more information.</p>
<b>EAP authentication</b>	<p>FortiAuthenticator can check that the client's certificate is signed by one of the configured authorized CA certificates (see <a href="#">Certificate authorities on page 1</a>). The client certificate must also match one of the user certificates (see <a href="#">End entities on page 1</a>).</p>

Any changes made to certificates generate log entries that can be viewed under **Logging > Log Access > Logs**. See [Logging on page 1](#).

## Policies

The policies section includes global configuration settings which are applied across all CAs and end-entity certificates created on FortiAuthenticator.

## Certificate expiry

Certificate expiration settings can be configured under **Certificate Management > Policies > Certificate Expiry**.

Enable **Warn when a certificate is about to expire** to configure the following:

<b>Send a warning email</b>	Enter the number of days before the certificate expires that the email will be sent, between 0-365 (maximum of one year). The default is <b>7</b> .
<b>Administrator's email</b>	Enter the email address to which the expiry warning message will be sent.

Select **OK** to apply any configuration changes.

## End entities

User and server certificates are required for mutual authentication on many HTTPS, SSL, and IPsec VPN network resources. You can create a user certificate on the FortiAuthenticator device, or import and sign a CSR. User certificates, client certificates, or local computer certificates are all the same type of certificate.

To view the user certificate list, go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Users**. To view the server certificate list, go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Local Services**.

The following information is available:

<b>Create New</b>	Create a new certificate.
<b>Import</b>	Select to import a certificate signed by a third-party CA for a previously generated CSR (see <a href="#">To import a local user certificate: on page 178</a> and <a href="#">To import a server certificate: on page 178</a> ) or to import a CSR to sign (see <a href="#">To import a CSR to sign: on page 178</a> ).
<b>Revoke</b>	Revoke the selected certificate. See <a href="#">To revoke a certificate: on page 180</a> .
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected certificate.
<b>Export Certificate</b>	Save the selected certificate to your computer.
<b>Export PKCS#12</b>	Export the PKCS#12. This is only available for user certificates.
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term in the search field, then press Enter to search the certificate list.
<b>Filter</b>	Select to filter the displayed certificates by status. The available selections are: <b>All</b> , <b>Pending</b> , <b>Expired</b> , and <b>Active</b> .
<b>Certificate ID</b>	The certificate ID.
<b>Subject</b>	The certificate's subject.
<b>Issuer</b>	The issuer of the certificate.
<b>Status</b>	The status of the certificate.

Certificates can be created, imported, exported, revoked, and deleted as required. CSRs can be imported to sign, and the certificate detail information can also be viewed, see [To view certificate details: on page 180](#).

**To create a new certificate:**

1. To create a new user certificate, go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Users**. To create a new server certificate, go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Local Services**.
2. Select **Create New** to open the **Create New User Certificate** or **Create New Server Certificate** window.

Create New User Certificate	
Certificate ID:	<input type="text"/>
<b>Certificate Signing Options</b>	
Issuer:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Local CA <input type="radio"/> Third-party CA
Local User (Optional):	[ Please Select ] ▼
Certificate authority:	<input type="text" value="http://fac.school.info/cert/crl/"/>
<b>Subject Information</b>	
Subject input method:	<input type="radio"/> Fully distinguished name <input checked="" type="radio"/> Field-by-field
Name (CN):	<input type="text"/>
Department (OU):	<input type="text"/>
Company (O):	<input type="text"/>
City (L):	<input type="text"/>
State/Province (ST):	<input type="text"/>
Country (C):	<input type="text"/>
Email address:	<input type="text"/>
<b>Key and Signing Options</b>	
Validity period:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Set length of time <input type="radio"/> Set an expiry date
	<input type="text" value="365"/> days
Key type:	RSA
Key size:	2048 Bits ▼
Hash algorithm:	SHA-256 ▼
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Email:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> User Principal Name (UPN):	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> URI:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> DNS:	<input type="text"/>
<b>Other Extensions</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Add CRL Distribution Points extension (Location: http://fac.school.info/cert/crl/) [Edit device FQDN]	
<input type="checkbox"/> Add OCSP Responder URL (Location: http://fac.school.info:2560) [Edit device FQDN]	
<input type="checkbox"/> Use certificate for Smart Card login	
<b>Advanced Options: Key Usages</b>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

- ### 3. Configure the following settings:

<b>Certificate ID</b>	Enter a unique ID for the certificate.
<b>Certificate Signing Options</b>	
<b>Issuer</b>	Select the issuer of the certificate, either <b>Local CA</b> or <b>Third-party CA</b> . Selecting <b>Third-party CA</b> generates a CSR that is to be signed by a third-party CA.
<b>Local User (Optional)</b>	If <b>Local CA</b> is selected as the issuer, you may select a local user from the dropdown menu to whom the certificate will apply. This option is only available when creating a new user certificate.
<b>Certificate authority</b>	<p>If <b>Local CA</b> is selected as the issuer, select one of the available CAs configured on FortiAuthenticator from the dropdown menu.</p> <p>The CA must be valid and current. If it is not you will have to create or import a CA certificate before continuing. See <a href="#">Certificate authorities on page 1</a>.</p>
<b>Subject Information</b>	
<b>Subject input method</b>	Select the subject input method, either <b>Fully distinguished name</b> or <b>Field-by-field</b> .
<b>Subject DN</b>	<p>If the subject input method is <b>Fully distinguished name</b>, enter the full distinguished name of the subject. There should be no spaces between attributes.</p> <p>Valid DN attributes are DC, C, ST, L, O, OU, CN, and emailAddress. They are case-sensitive.</p>
<b>Name (CN)</b>	<p>If the subject input method is <b>Field-by-field</b>, enter the subject name in the <b>Name (CN)</b> field, and optionally fill-in the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Department (OU)</b></li> <li>• <b>Company (O)</b></li> <li>• <b>City (L)</b></li> <li>• <b>State/Province (ST)</b></li> <li>• <b>Country (C)</b> (select from dropdown menu)</li> <li>• <b>Email address</b></li> </ul>
<b>Key and Signing Options</b>	
<b>Validity period</b>	<p>Select the amount of time before this certificate expires. This validity period option is only available when <b>Issuer</b> is set to <b>Local CA</b>.</p> <p>Select <b>Set length of time</b> to enter a specific number of days, or select <b>Set an expiry date</b> to enter the specific date on which the certificate expires.</p>
<b>Key type</b>	The key type is set to <b>RSA</b> .

<b>Key size</b>	Select the key size from the dropdown menu, either <b>1024</b> , <b>2048</b> , or <b>4096</b> bits.
<b>Hash algorithm</b>	Select the hash algorithm from the dropdown menu, either <b>SHA-256</b> or <b>SHA-1</b> .
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	<p>Subject alternative names (SAN) allow you to protect multiple host names with a single SSL certificate. SAN is part of the X.509 certificate standard.</p> <p>For example, SANs are used to protect multiple domain names such as <code>www.example.com</code> and <code>www.example.net</code>, in contrast to wildcard certificates that only protect all first-level subdomains on one domain, such as <code>*.example.com</code>.</p>
<b>Email</b>	Enter the email address of a user to map to this certificate.
<b>User Principal Name (UPN)</b>	Enter the UPN used to find the user's account in Microsoft Active Directory. This will map the certificate to this specific user. The UPN is unique for the Windows Server domain. This is a form of one-to-one mapping.
<b>URI</b>	Enter the URI used to validate certificates.
<b>DNS</b>	Enter the DNS used to validate and sign the imported CSR.
<b>Other Extensions</b>	This option is only available when creating a new user certificate, and when <b>Issuer</b> is set to <b>Local CA</b> .
<b>Add CRL Distribution Points extension</b>	<p>Select to add CRL distribution points extension to the certificate.</p> <p>A DNS domain name must be configured. If it has not been, select <b>Edit DNS name</b> to configure one. See <a href="#">DNS on page 1</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Once a certificate is issued with this extension, the server must be able to handle the CRL request at the specified location.</p>
<b>Add OCSP Responder URL</b>	Enable Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) to obtain the revocation status of a certificate.
<b>Use certificate for Smart Card logon</b>	<p>Select to use the certificate for smart card logon.</p> <p>Enabling this setting will automatically enable <b>Add CRL Distribution Points extension</b>.</p>
<b>Advanced Options: Key Usages</b>	Some certificates require the explicit presence of key usage attributes before the certificate can be accepted for use.
<b>Digital Signature</b>	A high-integrity signature that assures the recipient that a message was not altered in transit
<b>Non Repudiation</b>	An authentication that is deemed as genuine with high assurance.
<b>Key Encipherment</b>	Uses the public key to encrypt private or secret keys.



<b>Data Encipherment</b>	Uses the public key to encrypt data.
<b>Key Agreement</b>	An interactive method for multiple parties to establish a cryptographic key, based on prior knowledge of a password.
<b>Certificate Sign</b>	A message from an applicant to a certificate authority in order to apply for a digital identity certificate.
<b>CRL Sign</b>	A Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Sign states a validity period for an issued certificate.
<b>Encipher Only</b>	Information will be converted into code only.
<b>Decipher Only</b>	Code will be converted into information only.
<b>Advanced Options: Extended Key Usages</b>	Some certificates require the explicit presence of <b>extended</b> key usage attributes before the certificate can be accepted for use.
<b>Server Authentication</b>	Authentication will only be granted when the user submits their credentials to the server.
<b>Client Authentication</b>	Authentication will be granted to the server by exchanging a client certificate.
<b>Code Signing</b>	Used to confirm the software author, and guarantees that the code has not been altered or corrupted through use of a cryptographic hash.
<b>Secure Email</b>	A secure email sent over SSL encryption.
<b>OCSP Signing</b>	Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) Signing sends a request to the server for certificate status information. The server will send back a response of "current", "expired", or "unknown". OCSP permits a grace period to users or are expired, allowing them a limited time period to renew. This is typically used over CRL.
<b>IPSec End System</b>	
<b>IPSec Tunnel Termination</b>	IPsec Security Associations (SAs) are terminated through deletion or by timing out
<b>IPSec User</b>	
<b>IPSec IKE Intermediate (end entity)</b>	An intermediate certificate is a subordinate certificate issued by a trusted root specifically to issue end-entity certificates. The result is a certificate chain that begins at the trusted root CA, through the intermediate CA (or CAs) and ending with the SSL certificate issued to you.
<b>Time Stamping</b>	
<b>Microsoft Individual Code Signing</b>	User submits information that is compared to an independent consumer database to validate their credentials.

<b>Microsoft Commercial Code Signing</b>	User submits information that proves their identity as corporate representatives.
<b>Microsoft Trust List Signing</b>	Uses a certificate trust list (CTL), a list of hashes of certificates. The list is comprised of pre-authenticated items that were approved by a trusted signing entity.
<b>Microsoft Server Gated Crypto</b>	A defunct mechanism that stepped up 40-bit and 50-bit to 128-bit cipher suites with SSL.
<b>Netscape Server Gated Crypto</b>	A defunct mechanism that stepped up 40-bit and 50-bit to 128-bit cipher suites with SSL.
<b>Microsoft Encrypted File System</b>	The Encrypted File System (EFS) enables files to be transparently encrypted to protect confidential data.
<b>Microsoft EFS File Recovery</b>	The certificate will be granted on the condition it has an EFS file recovery agent prepared.
<b>Smart Card Logon</b>	The certificate will be granted on the condition that the user logs on to the network with a smart card.
<b>EAP over PPP</b>	Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) will operate within a Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) framework.
<b>EAP over LAN</b>	EAP will operate within a Local Area Network (LAN) framework.
<b>KDC Authentication</b>	An authentication server forwards usernames to a key distribution center (KDC), which issues an encrypted, time-stamped ticket back to the user.

4. Select **OK** to create the new certificate.

#### To import a local user certificate:

1. Go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Users** and select **Import**.
2. For **Type**, select **Local certificate**.
3. Select **Choose File** to locate the certificate file on your computer.
4. Select **OK** to import the certificate.

#### To import a server certificate:

1. Go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Local Services** and select **Import**.
2. Select **Choose File** to locate the certificate file on your computer.
3. Select **OK** to import the certificate.

#### To import a CSR to sign:

1. Go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Users** and select **Import**.
2. For **Type**, select **CSR to sign**.

**Import Signing Request or Certificate**

<b>Type:</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> CSR to sign <input type="radio"/> Local certificate
Certificate ID:	<input type="text"/>
CSR file (.csr, .req):	<input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen

**Certificate Signing Options**

Certificate authority:	<input type="text" value="Root, RootCA, Local, External, LocalCA, ExternalCA, ExternalCA, ExternalCA, ExternalCA"/>
Validity period:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Set length of time <input type="radio"/> Set an expiry date
	<input type="text" value="365"/> days
Hash algorithm:	<input type="text" value="SHA-256"/>

**Subject Alternative Name**

<input type="checkbox"/> Email:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> User Principal Name (UPN):	<input type="text"/>

**Other Extensions**

<input type="checkbox"/> Add CRL Distribution Points extension (Location: <a href="http://fac.school.info/cert/crl/">http://fac.school.info/cert/crl/</a> ) <a href="#">[Edit device FQDN]</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> Add OCSP Responder URL (Location: <a href="http://fac.school.info:2560/">http://fac.school.info:2560/</a> ) <a href="#">[Edit device FQDN]</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> Use certificate for Smart Card logon

**Advanced Options: Key Usages**

### 3. Configure the following settings:

<b>Certificate ID</b>	Enter a unique ID for the certificate.
<b>CSR file (.csr, .req)</b>	Select <b>Choose File</b> then locate the CSR file on your computer.
<b>Certificate Signing Options</b>	
<b>Certificate authority</b>	<p>Select one of the available CAs configured on the FortiAuthenticator from the dropdown menu.</p> <p>The CA must be valid and current. If it is not you will have to create or import a CA certificate before continuing. See <a href="#">Certificate authorities on page 1</a>.</p>
<b>Validity period</b>	<p>Select the amount of time before this certificate expires.</p> <p>Select <b>Set length of time</b> to enter a specific number of days, or select <b>Set an expiry date</b> and enter the specific date on which the certificate expires</p>
<b>Hash algorithm</b>	Select the hash algorithm from the dropdown menu, either <b>SHA-256</b> or <b>SHA-1</b> .
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
<b>Email</b>	Enter the email address of a user to map to this certificate.

<b>User Principal Name (UPN)</b>	Enter the UPN used to find the user's account in Microsoft Active Directory. This will map the certificate to this specific user. The UPN is unique the Windows Server domain. This is a form of one-to-one mapping.
<b>Other Extensions</b>	
<b>Add CRL Distribution Points extension</b>	<p>Select to add CRL distribution points extension to the certificate.</p> <p>A DNS domain name must be configured. If it has not been, select <b>Edit DNS name</b> to configure one. See <a href="#">DNS on page 1</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Once a certificate is issued with this extension, the server must be able to handle the CRL request at the specified location.</p>
<b>Add OCSP Responder URL</b>	Enable Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) to obtain the revocation status of a certificate.
<b>Use certificate for Smart Card logon</b>	<p>Select to use the certificate for smart card logon.</p> <p>Enabling this setting will automatically enable <b>Add CRL Distribution Points extension</b>.</p>
<b>Advanced Options: Key Usages and Extended Key Usages</b>	<p>Some certificates require the explicit presence of key usage attributes before the certificate can be accepted for use.</p> <p>Same settings available as when creating a new user certificate (see above).</p>

4. Select **OK** to import the CSR.

#### To revoke a certificate:

1. Go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Users** or to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Local Services**.
2. Select the certificate that will be revoked and select **Revoke**.
3. Select a reason for revoking the certificate from the **Reason code** dropdown menu. The reasons available are:
  - **Unspecified**
  - **Key has been compromised**
  - **CA has been compromised**
  - **Changes in affiliation**
  - **Superseded**
  - **Operation ceased**
  - **On Hold**

Some of these reasons are security related (such as the key or CA being compromised), while others are more business related. A **Change in affiliation** could be an employee leaving the company, while **Operation ceased** could be a project that was cancelled.

4. Select **OK** to revoke the certificate.

#### To view certificate details:

From the certificate list, select a certificate ID to open the **Certificate Detail Information** window.

Select **Edit** next to the **Certificate ID** field to change the certificate ID. If any of this information is out of date or incorrect, you will not be able to use this certificate. If this is the case, delete the certificate and re-enter the information in a new certificate, see [To create a new certificate: on page 173](#). Select **Close** to return to the certificate list.

## Certificate authorities

A certificate authority (CA) is used to sign other server and client certificates. Different CAs can be used for different domains or certificates. For example, if your organization is international you may have a CA for each country, or smaller organizations might have a different CA for each department. The benefits of multiple CAs include redundancy, in case there are problems with one of the well-known trusted authorities.

Once you have created a CA certificate, you can export it to your local computer.

### Local CAs

The FortiAuthenticator device can act as a self-signed, or local, CA.

To view the certificate information, go to **Certificate Management > Certificate Authorities > Local CAs**.

The following information is shown:

<b>Create New</b>	Create a new CA certificate.
<b>Import</b>	Import a CA certificate. See <a href="#">Importing CA certificates and signing requests on page 185</a> .
<b>Revoke</b>	Revoke the selected CA certificate.
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected CA certificate.
<b>Export</b>	Save the selected CA certificate to your computer.
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term in the search field, then press Enter to search the CA certificate list. The search will return certificates that match either the subject or issuer.
<b>Filter</b>	Select to filter the displayed CAs by status. The available selections are: <b>All</b> , <b>Pending</b> , <b>Expired</b> , <b>Revoked</b> , and <b>Active</b> .
<b>Certificate ID</b>	The CA certificate ID.
<b>Subject</b>	The CA certificate subject.
<b>Issuer</b>	The issuer of the CA certificate.
<b>Status</b>	The status of the CA certificate.
<b>CA Type</b>	The CA type of the CA certificate.

**To create a CA certificate:**

1. From the local CA certificate list, select **Create New**. The **Create New Local CA Certificate** window opens.

Create New Local CA Certificate	
Certificate ID:	<input type="text"/>
<b>Certificate Authority Type</b>	
Certificate type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Root CA certificate <input type="radio"/> Intermediate CA certificate <input type="radio"/> Intermediate CA certificate signing request (CSR)
<b>Subject Information</b>	
Subject input method:	<input type="radio"/> Fully distinguished name <input checked="" type="radio"/> Field-by-field
Name (CN):	<input type="text"/>
Department (OU):	<input type="text"/>
Company (O):	<input type="text"/>
City (L):	<input type="text"/>
State/Province (ST):	<input type="text"/>
Country (C):	<input type="text" value="▼"/>
Email address:	<input type="text"/>
<b>Key and Signing Options</b>	
Validity period:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Set length of time <input type="radio"/> Set an expiry date
	<input type="text" value="3650"/> days
Key type:	RSA
Key size:	<input type="text" value="2048"/> Bits ▼
Hash algorithm:	<input type="text" value="SHA-256"/> ▼
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Email:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> User Principal Name (UPN):	<input type="text"/>
▶ <b>Advanced Options: Key Usages</b>	
<b>Certificate Revocation List (CRL)</b>	
Lifetime:	<input type="text" value="30"/> days (1-365)
Re-generate every:	<input type="text" value="1"/> days
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

2. Enter the following information:

<b>Certificate ID</b>	Enter a unique ID for the CA certificate.
<b>Certificate Authority Type</b>	

<b>Certificate type</b>	Select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Root CA certificate:</b> A self-signed CA certificate.</li> <li>• <b>Intermediate CA certificate:</b> A CA certificate that refers to a different root CA as the authority.</li> <li>• <b>Intermediate CA certificate signing request (CSR)</b></li> </ul>
<b>Certificate authority</b>	Select one of the available CAs from the dropdown menu.  This field is only available when the certificate type is <b>Intermediate CA certificate</b> .
<b>Subject Information</b>	
<b>Subject input method</b>	Select the subject input method, either <b>Fully distinguished name</b> or <b>Field-by-field</b> .
<b>Subject DN</b>	If the subject input method is <b>Fully distinguished name</b> , enter the full distinguished name of the subject. There should be no spaces between attributes.  Valid DN attributes are DC, C, ST, L, O, OU, CN, and emailAddress. They are case-sensitive.
<b>Name (CN)</b>	If the subject input method is <b>Field-by-field</b> , enter the subject name in the <b>Name (CN)</b> field, and optionally enter the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Department (OU)</b></li> <li>• <b>Company (O)</b></li> <li>• <b>City (L)</b></li> <li>• <b>State/Province (ST)</b></li> <li>• <b>Country (C)</b> (select from dropdown menu)</li> <li>• <b>Email address</b></li> </ul>
<b>Key and Signing Options</b>	
<b>Validity period</b>	Select the amount of time before this certificate expires.  Select <b>Set length of time</b> to enter a specific number of days, or select <b>Set an expiry date</b> and enter the specific date on which the certificate expires.  This option is not available when the certificate type is set to <b>Intermediate CA certificate signing request (CSR)</b> .
<b>Key type</b>	The key type is set to <b>RSA</b> .
<b>Key size</b>	Select the key size from the dropdown menu: <b>1024</b> , <b>2048</b> (set by default), or <b>4096</b> bits.
<b>Hash algorithm</b>	Select the hash algorithm from the dropdown menu, either <b>SHA-256</b> (set by default) or <b>SHA-1</b> .

<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	<p>SANs allow you to protect multiple host names with a single SSL certificate. SAN is part of the X.509 certificate standard.</p> <p>This section is not available when the certificate type is <b>Intermediate CA certificate signing request (CSR)</b>.</p>
<b>Email</b>	Enter the email address of a user to map to this certificate.
<b>User Principal Name (UPN)</b>	Enter the UPN used to find the user's account in Microsoft Active Directory. This will map the certificate to this specific user. The UPN is unique for the Windows Server domain. This is a form of one-to-one mapping.
<b>Advanced Options: Key Usages</b>	<p>Some certificates require the explicit presence of extended key usage attributes before the certificate can be accepted for use.</p> <p>For detailed information about these attributes, see <a href="#">End entities on page 1</a>.</p>
<b>Key Usages</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Digital Signature</b></li><li>• <b>Non Repudiation</b></li><li>• <b>Key Encipherment</b></li><li>• <b>Data Encipherment</b></li><li>• <b>Key Agreement</b></li><li>• <b>Certificate Sign</b></li><li>• <b>CRL Sign</b></li><li>• <b>Encipher Only</b></li><li>• <b>Decipher Only</b></li></ul>



<b>Extended Key Usages</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Server Authentication</b></li> <li>• <b>Client Authentication</b></li> <li>• <b>Code Signing</b></li> <li>• <b>Secure Email</b></li> <li>• <b>OCSP Signing</b></li> <li>• <b>IPSec End System</b></li> <li>• <b>IPSec Tunnel Termination</b></li> <li>• <b>IPSec User</b></li> <li>• <b>IPSec IKE Intermediate (end entity)</b></li> <li>• <b>Time Stamping</b></li> <li>• <b>Microsoft Individual Code Signing</b></li> <li>• <b>Microsoft Commercial Code Signing</b></li> <li>• <b>Microsoft Trust List Signing</b></li> <li>• <b>Microsoft Server Gated Crypto</b></li> <li>• <b>Netscape Server Gated Crypto</b></li> <li>• <b>Microsoft Encrypted File System</b></li> <li>• <b>Microsoft EFS File Recovery</b></li> <li>• <b>Smart Card Logon</b></li> <li>• <b>EAP over PPP</b></li> <li>• <b>EAP over LAN</b></li> <li>• <b>KDC Authentication</b></li> </ul>
<b>Certificate Revocation List (CRL)</b>	Determine the certificate's lifetime before the CA certificate is revoked.
<b>Lifetime</b>	Enter the lifetime of the certificate in days, between 1-365 (maximum of one year). The default is <b>30</b> .
<b>Re-generate every</b>	Enter how often the certificate will regenerate.

3. Select **OK** to create the new CA certificate.

### Importing CA certificates and signing requests

Four options are available when importing a certificate or signing request: **PKCS12 Certificate**, **Certificate and Private Key**, **CSR to sign**, and **Local certificate**.

#### To import a PKCS12 certificate:

1. From the local CA certificate list, select **Import**. The **Import Signing Request or Local CA Certificate** window opens.
2. Select **PKCS12 Certificate** in the type field.

**Import Signing Request or Local CA Certificate**

**Type:**

☒ PKCS12 Certificate  
☐ Certificate and Private Key  
☐ CSR to sign  
☐ Local certificate

**Certificate ID:**

**PKCS12 certificate file (.p12):** Choose File No file chosen

**Passphrase:**

**Initial Serial Number**

**Serial number radix:** ☐ Decimal ☒ Hex

**Initial serial number:**

OK Cancel

3. Enter the following:

<b>Certificate ID</b>	Enter a unique ID for the certificate.
<b>PKCS12 certificate file (.p12)</b>	Select <b>Choose File</b> to locate the certificate file on your computer.
<b>Passphrase</b>	Enter the certificate passphrase.
<b>Initial Serial Number</b>	Select the serial number radix, either <b>Decimal</b> or <b>Hex</b> , and enter the initial serial number in the <b>Initial serial number</b> field.

4. Select **OK** to import the certificate.

#### To import a certificate with a private key:

- From the local CA certificate list, select **Import**. The **Import Signing Request or Local CA Certificate** window opens.
- Select **Certificate and Private Key** in the type field.
- Enter the following:

<b>Certificate ID</b>	Enter a unique ID for the certificate.
<b>Certificate file (.cer)</b>	Select <b>Choose File</b> to locate the certificate file on your computer.
<b>Private key file</b>	Select <b>Choose File</b> to locate the private key file on your computer.
<b>Passphrase</b>	Enter the certificate passphrase.
<b>Initial Serial Number</b>	Select the serial number radix, either <b>Decimal</b> or <b>Hex</b> , and enter the initial serial number in the <b>Initial serial number</b> field.

4. Select **OK** to import the certificate.

**To import a CSR to sign:**

1. From the local CA certificate list, select **Import**. The **Import Signing Request or Local CA Certificate** window opens.
2. Select **CSR to sign** in the type field.
3. Enter the following:

<b>Certificate ID</b>	Enter a unique ID for the certificate.
<b>CSR file (.csr, .req)</b>	Select <b>Choose File</b> to locate the CSR file on your computer.
<b>Certificate Signing Options</b>	
<b>Certificate authority</b>	Select one of the available CAs from the dropdown menu.
<b>Validity period</b>	Select the amount of time before this certificate expires.  Select <b>Set length of time</b> to enter a specific number of days, or select <b>Set an expiry date</b> and enter the specific date on which the certificate expires.
<b>Hash algorithm</b>	Select the hash algorithm from the dropdown menu, either <b>SHA-256</b> or <b>SHA-1</b> .
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	SANs allow you to protect multiple host names with a single SSL certificate. SAN is part of the X.509 certificate standard.
<b>Email</b>	Enter the email address of a user to map to this certificate.
<b>User Principal Name (UPN)</b>	Enter the UPN used to find the user's account in Microsoft Active Directory. This will map the certificate to this specific user. The UPN is unique for the Windows Server domain. This is a form of one-to-one mapping.
<b>Advanced Options: Key Usages</b>	Some certificates require the explicit presence of extended key usage attributes before the certificate can be accepted for use.  For detailed information about these attributes, see <a href="#">End entities on page 1</a> .

4. Select **OK** to import the CSR.

**To import a local CA certificate:**

1. From the local CA certificate list, select **Import**. The **Import Signing Request or Local CA Certificate** window opens.
2. Select **Local certificate** in the type field.
3. Select **Choose File** to locate the certificate file on your computer.
4. Select **OK** to import the local CA certificate.

## Certificate revocations lists

A certificate revocation list (CRL) is a file that contains a list of revoked certificates, their serial numbers, and their revocation dates. The file also contains the name of the issuer of the CRL, the effective date, and the next update date. By default, the shortest validity period of a CRL is one hour.

Some potential reasons for certificates to be revoked include:

- A CA server was hacked and its certificates are no longer trusted.
- A single certificate was compromised and is no longer trusted.
- A certificate has expired and is not supposed to be used past its lifetime.

Go to **Certificate Management > Certificate Authorities > CRLs** to view the CRL list.

The following information is shown:

<b>Import</b>	Import a CRL.
<b>Automatic Downloads</b>	Select to view automatically downloaded CRLs. Select <b>View CRLs</b> to switch back to the regular CRL view.
<b>Export</b>	Save the selected CRL to your computer.
<b>CA Type</b>	The CA type of CRL.
<b>Issuer name</b>	The name of the issuer of the CRL.
<b>Subject</b>	The CRL's subject.
<b>Revoked Certificates</b>	The number of revoked certificates in the CRL.

### To import a CRL:

1. Download the most recent CRL from a CDP. One or more CDPs are usually listed in a certificate under the **Details** tab.
2. From the CRL list, select **Import**.
3. Select **Choose File** to locate the file on your computer, then select **OK** to import the list.

**Note:** Before importing a CRL file, make sure that either a local CA certificate or a trusted CA certificate for this CRL has first been imported.

When successful, the CRL will be displayed in the CRL list on the FortiAuthenticator. You can select it to see the details (see [To view certificate details on page 1](#)).

### Locally created CRLs

When you import a CRL, it is from another authority. If you are creating your own CA certificates, you can also create your own CRL to accompany them.

As a CA, you sign user certificates. If for any reason you need to revoke one of those certificates, it will go on a local CRL. When this happens you must export the CRL to all your certificate users so they are aware of the revoked certificate.

**To create a local CRL:**

1. Create a local CA certificate. See [Local CAs on page 181](#).
2. Create one or more user certificates. See [End entities on page 1](#).
3. Go to **Certificate Management > End Entities > Users**, select one or more certificates, and select **Revoke**. See [To revoke a certificate: on page 1](#).

The selected certificates will be removed from the user certificate list and a CRL will be created with those certificates as entries in the list. If there is already a CRL for the CA that signed the user certificates, the certificates will be added to the current CRL.



If later one or more CAs are deleted, their corresponding CRLs will also be deleted, along with any user certificates that they signed.

## Configuring OCSP

FortiAuthenticator also supports Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP), defined in [RFC 2560](#). To use OCSP, configure the FortiGate unit to use TCP port 2560 on the FortiAuthenticator IP address.

For example, enter the following to configure OCSP on the FortiGate's **CLI Console**, where the url is the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator:

```
config vpn certificate ocsf-server
edit FortiAuthenticator_ocsp
set cert "REMOTE_Cert_1"
set url "http://172.20.120.16:2560"
end
```

## Trusted CAs

Trusted CA certificates can be used to validate certificates signed by an external CA.

To view the trusted CA certificate list, go to **Certificate Management > Certificate Authorities > Trusted CAs**.

The certificate ID, subject, issuer, and status are shown. Certificates can be imported, exported, deleted, and searched.

**To import a trusted CA certificate:**

1. From the trusted CA certificate list, select **Import**.
2. Enter a certificate ID in the **Certificate ID** field.
3. Select **Choose File** to locate the certificate file on your computer, and select **OK** to import the list.

When successful, the trusted CA certificate will be displayed in the list on the FortiAuthenticator device. You can select it to see the details (see [To view certificate details: on page 1](#)).

## SCEP

FortiAuthenticator contains a Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server that can sign user CSRs, and distribute CRLs and CA certificates. To use SCEP, you must:

- Enable HTTP administrative access on the interface connected to the Internet. See [Interfaces on page 1](#).
- Add the CA certificate for your certificate authority. See [Certificate authorities on page 1](#).
- Select the CA to use for SCEP. See [Default CA on page 190](#).

Users can request a user certificate through online SCEP, found at `http://<FortiAuthenticator-IP-Address>/cert/scep`.

## General

As an administrator, you can allow FortiAuthenticator to either automatically sign the user's certificate or alert you about the request for a signature.

To enable SCEP and configure general settings, go to **Certificate Management > SCEP > General** and select **Enable SCEP**.

Configure the following settings:

<b>Default CA</b>	Select the default CA to use from the dropdown menu.
<b>Enrollment method</b>	<p>Select the enrollment method:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Automatic:</b> The certificate is pre-approved by the administrator. The administrator enters the certificate information on FortiAuthenticator and gives the user a challenger password to use when submitting their request.</li> <li>• <b>Manual and Automatic:</b> The user submits the CSR, the request shows up as pending on FortiAuthenticator unit, then the administrator manually approves the pending request. Optionally, enter an email address to be informed of pending approval notifications.</li> </ul>
<b>Default enrollment password</b>	Enter the default enrollment password that will be used when not setting a random password.
<b>Revoke the old certificate on renewal</b>	Enable to revoke the old certificate once it has been renewed.

Select **OK** to apply any changes you have made.

## Enrollment requests

To view and manage certificate enrollment requests, go to **Certificate Management > SCEP > Enrollment Requests**.

Note that, before you can create or configure certificate enrollment requests, SCEP must be enabled, and HTTP access must be enabled on the network interface(s) that will serve SCEP clients (under **System > Network > Interfaces**).

The following information is available:

<b>Create New</b>	Create a new certificate enrollment request.
-------------------	--

<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected certificate enrollment request.
<b>Approve/Reject</b>	Approve or reject the selected certificate enrollment request.
<b>Method</b>	The enrollment method used.
<b>Status</b>	The status of the enrollment: <b>Pending</b> , <b>Approved</b> , or <b>Rejected</b> .
<b>Wildcard</b>	If it is a wildcard request, a green circle with a check mark is shown.
<b>Issuer</b>	The issuer of the certificate.
<b>Subject</b>	The certificate subject.
<b>Renewable Before Expiry (days)</b>	The number of days before the certificate enrollment request expires that it can be renewed.
<b>Updated at</b>	The date and time that the enrollment request was last updated.

#### To view the enrollment request details:

1. From the enrollment request list, select a request by clicking within its row.

**Certificate Enrollment Request**


Subject:	C=GB, ST=Cheshire, L=Wilmslow, O=Acme, OU=Sales, CN=192.168.0.109
Issuer:	CN=FortiAuthenticator_3.0_CA
Status:	Approved
Method:	Automatic
Wildcard request:	❌
Validity period (days):	365
Hash algorithm:	SHA-1
Last updated:	Fri Nov 8 16:39:37 2013
Can be renewed within days of expiration:	❌
Did the client lose his/her certificate and key?	

2. Select **Close** to return to the enrollment request window.

#### To reset the enrollment request status:

1. From the **Certificate Enrollment Request** window, select **Did the client lose his/her certificate and key?**  
The **Reset enrollment request status?** window opens.

**Reset enrollment request status?**

 **Warning!** Be careful when using this feature. Please read the explanation below before continuing.

**Background Problem**  
There can be a case where a client loses his certificate. This client cannot make another request using the same key to retrieve the issued certificate because the key is also lost. The client cannot simply create a new key pair and certificate request to re-enroll for a replacement certificate either, due to subject name uniqueness constraint.

Moreover, since CA has issued a certificate for this client, the automatic (pre-approved) enrollment request status has changed to "Approved" and can no longer be re-used to enroll for a new replacement certificate.

**Solution**  
There are two ways to solve this issue:

1. Manually remove the old enrollment request and revoke its certificate. Then, create a new enrollment request with exactly the same configuration and subject name as the old certificate.
2. Re-use the same enrollment request by first resetting its status and then revoking the old (lost) certificate. (**Recommended**)

This feature would perform Solution 2.

If you wish to continue to reset the status of this enrollment request ("C=GB, ST=Cheshire, L=Wilmslow, O=Acme, OU=Sales, CN=192.168.0.109"), please confirm below.

2. There are two methods to reset the enrollment request:
  - Manually remove the old enrollment request, revoke its certificate, then create a new enrollment request with exactly the same configuration and subject name as the old certificate.
  - Re-use the same enrollment request by resetting its status and then revoking the lost certificate (recommended).
3. To re-use the same enrollment request, select **Yes, I'm sure**.



**To create a new certificate enrollment request:**

1. From the certificate enrollment requests list, select **Create New**.

**Create New Certificate Enrollment Request**

**Automatic request type:** ☒ Regular ☐ Wildcard

**Certificate Authority**  
**Certificate authority:**  
FGT90D\_RootCA | ST=Ontario, O=Fortinet, CN=FGT90DRootCA, emailAddress=jhaney@fortinet.com ▼

**Subject Information**  
**Subject input method:** ☐ Fully distinguished name ☒ Field-by-field  
**Name (CN):**   
**Department (OU):**   
**Company (O):**   
**City (L):**   
**State/Province (ST):**   
**Country (C):**   
**Email address:**

**Certificate Signing Options**  
**Validity period:** ☒ Set length of time ☐ Set an expiry date  
 days  
**Hash algorithm:**  ▼

**Challenge Password**  
**Password creation:** ☒ Set a random password ☐ Use SCEP default enrollment password  
**Challenge password distribution:**  
☒ Display  
☐ SMS    ▼  
☐ Email

**Renewal**  
☐ Allow renewal  days before certificate is expired (min. 1 day)  
☒ Allow renewal if revoked  
☒ Allow renewal if expired  
☐ Verify renewal request is signed using the old private key

**Subject Alternative Name**  
☐ Email:   
☐ User Principal Name (UPN):

**Advanced Options: Key Usages**

## 2. Enter the following information:

<b>Automatic request type</b>	Select the automatic request type, either <b>Regular</b> or <b>Wildcard</b> .
<b>Certificate Authority</b>	<p>Select one of the available CAs configured on FortiAuthenticator from the dropdown menu.</p> <p>The CA must be valid and current. If it is not you will have to create or import a CA certificate before continuing. See <a href="#">Certificate authorities on page 1</a>.</p>
<b>Subject Information</b>	
<b>Subject input method</b>	Select the subject input method, either <b>Fully distinguished name</b> or <b>Field-by-field</b> .
<b>Subject DN</b>	<p>If the subject input method is <b>Fully distinguished name</b>, enter the full distinguished name of the subject. There should be no spaces between attributes.</p> <p>Valid DN attributes are DC, C, ST, L, O, OU, CN, and emailAddress. They are case-sensitive.</p>
<b>Name (CN)</b>	<p>If the subject input method is <b>Field-by-field</b>, enter the subject name in the <b>Name (CN)</b> field (if the <b>Automatic request type</b> is set to <b>Regular</b>), and optionally enter the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Department (OU)</b></li> <li>• <b>Company (O)</b></li> <li>• <b>City (L)</b></li> <li>• <b>State/Province (ST)</b></li> <li>• <b>Country (C)</b> (select from dropdown menu)</li> <li>• <b>Email address</b></li> </ul>
<b>Certificate Signing Options</b>	
<b>Validity period</b>	<p>Select the amount of time before this certificate expires.</p> <p>Select <b>Set length of time</b> to enter a specific number of days, or select <b>Set an expiry date</b> and enter the specific date on which the certificate expires.</p>
<b>Hash algorithm</b>	Select the hash algorithm from the dropdown menu, either <b>SHA-256</b> (set by default) or <b>SHA-1</b> .
<b>Challenge Password</b>	
<b>Password creation</b>	Select to either set a random password, or use the default enrollment password (see <a href="#">Default enrollment password on page 190</a> ).

<b>Challenge password distribution</b>	<p>Select the challenge password distribution method. This option is only available if <b>Password creation</b> is set to <b>Set a random password</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Display</b>: Display the password on the screen.</li> <li>• <b>SMS</b>: Send the password to a mobile phone. Enter the phone number in the <b>Mobile number</b> field and select an SMS gateway from the dropdown menu.</li> <li>• <b>Email</b>: Send the password to the email address entered in the email field.</li> </ul>
<b>Renewal</b>	<p>To allow renewals, select <b>Allow renewal</b>, then enter the number of days before the certificate expires (minimum of one day).</p> <p>Once renewal is enabled, you can optionally either allow or reject SCEP renewal requests for expired and revoked certificates (as burst renewal requests from FortiGates could exhaust the FortiAuthenticator and create duplicate certificates), and either allow or reject SCEP renewal requests signed using the old private key.</p>
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	<p>SANs allow you to protect multiple host names with a single SSL certificate. SAN is part of the X.509 certificate standard.</p> <p>This section is not available when the certificate type is <b>Intermediate CA certificate signing request (CSR)</b>.</p>
<b>Email</b>	Enter the email address of a user to map to this certificate.
<b>User Principal Name (UPN)</b>	Enter the UPN used to find the user's account in Microsoft Active Directory. This will map the certificate to this specific user. The UPN is unique for the Windows Server domain. This is a form of one-to-one mapping.
<b>Advanced Options: Key Usages</b>	<p>Some certificates require the explicit presence of extended key usage attributes before the certificate can be accepted for use.</p> <p>For detailed information about these attributes, see <a href="#">End entities on page 1</a>.</p>

3. Select **OK** to create the new certificate enrollment request.

Once created, the request will have a **Status** of **Pending**. A code will be displayed which must be provided to the client as a challenge password for the automatic certificate enrollment process.

# Logging

Accounting is an important part of FortiAuthenticator. The **Logging** menu tree provides a record of the events that have taken place on FortiAuthenticator.

## Log access

To view the log events table, go to **Logging > Log Access > Logs**.

The following options and information are available:

<b>Refresh</b>	Refresh the log list.
<b>Download Raw Log</b>	Export the FortiAuthenticator log to your computer as a text file named <b>FortiAuthenticator.log</b> .
<b>Log Type Reference</b>	Select to view the log type reference dialog box. See <a href="#">Log type reference on page 198</a> .
<b>Debug Report</b>	<p>Select to download the debug report to your computer as a file named <b>report.dbg</b>.</p> <p>You can also download a full debug report for one of the following (using the dropdown menu):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Authentication</b></li><li>• <b>Database</b></li><li>• <b>GUI</b></li><li>• <b>LDAP Sync</b></li><li>• <b>RADIUS Accounting</b></li><li>• <b>SSO</b></li><li>• <b>System</b></li><li>• <b>Custom debug</b></li><li>• <b>Push Authentication</b></li></ul>

<b>Search for log records</b>	<p>Enter a search term in the search field to search the log message list.</p> <p>The search string must appear in the Message portion of the log entry to result in a match. To prevent each term in a phrase from being matched separately, multiple keywords must be in quotes and be an exact match.</p> <p>After the search is complete the number of positive matches will be displayed next to the Search button, with the total number of log entries in brackets following. Select the total number of log entries to return to the full list. Subsequent searches will search all the log entries, and not just the previous search's results.</p>
<b>ID</b>	The log message's ID.
<b>Timestamp</b>	The time the message was received.
<b>Level</b>	<p>The log severity level:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Emergency:</b> The system has become unstable.</li> <li>• <b>Alert:</b> Immediate action is required.</li> <li>• <b>Critical:</b> Functionality is affected.</li> <li>• <b>Error:</b> An erroneous condition exists, and functionality is probably affected.</li> <li>• <b>Warning:</b> Functionality could be affected.</li> <li>• <b>Notification:</b> Information about normal events.</li> <li>• <b>Information:</b> General information about system operations.</li> <li>• <b>Debug:</b> Detailed information useful for debugging purposes.</li> </ul>
<b>Category</b>	The log category, which is always <b>Event</b> . See <a href="#">Log type reference on page 198</a> .
<b>Sub category</b>	The log subcategory. See <a href="#">Log type reference on page 198</a> .
<b>Type id</b>	The log type ID.
<b>Action</b>	The action which created the log message, if applicable.
<b>Status</b>	The status of the action that created the log message, if applicable.
<b>Source IP</b>	The source IP address of the relevant device if an authentication action fails.
<b>Short message</b>	The log message itself, sometimes slightly shortened.
<b>User</b>	The user to whom the log message pertains.

#### To view log details:

From the log list, select the log whose details you need to view by clicking anywhere within the log's row. The **Log Details** pane will open on the right side of the window.

After viewing the log details, select the close icon in the top right corner of the pane to close the details pane.

## Log type reference

Select **Log Type Reference** in the log list toolbar to open the log type reference dialog box.

The following information and options are available:

<b>Search for log types</b>	Enter a search term in the search field to search the log type reference.
<b>Type id</b>	The log type ID.
<b>Name</b>	The name of the log type.
<b>Sub category</b>	The log type subcategory, one of: <b>Admin Configuration</b> , <b>Authentication</b> , <b>System</b> , <b>High Availability</b> , <b>User Portal</b> , or <b>Web Service</b> .
<b>Category</b>	The log type category, which is always <b>Event</b> .
<b>Description</b>	A brief description of the log type.

To close the **Log Type Reference** dialog box, select **close** above the top right corner of the box, or simply click anywhere outside the box within the log list.

## Sort the log messages

The log message table can be sorted by any column. To sort the log entries by a particular column, select the title for that column. The log entries will now be displayed based on data in that column in ascending order. Select the column heading again to sort the entries in descending order. Ascending or descending is displayed with an arrow next to the column title, an up arrow for ascending and down arrow for descending.

## Log configuration

Logs can be remotely backed up to an FTP server, automatically deleted, and sent to a remote syslog server in lieu of storing them locally.

## Log settings

To configure log backups, automatic deletion, and remote storage, go to **Logging > Log Config > Log Settings**.

**Edit Log Setting**

**Log Backup**

☒ Enable remote backup  
 Frequency: ☐ Daily ☒ Weekly ☐ Monthly  
 Time:  [Now](#) |   
 FTP directory:   
 FTP server:  ▼

**Log Auto-Deletion**

☒ Enable log auto-deletion  
 Auto-delete logs older than:   ▼

**FortiManager/FortiAnalyzer**

☒ Send logs to FortiManager/FortiAnalyzer  
 IP Address:

**Remote Syslog**

☒ Send logs to remote Syslog servers  

Remote syslog servers:

Available syslog servers ⓘ

Choose all ⓘ

Chosen syslog servers ⓘ

Remove all ⓘ

### To configure log backups:

1. Under **Log Backup**, select **Enable remote backup**.
2. Set the **Frequency** to either **Daily**, **Weekly**, or **Monthly**.
3. Configure the time of day that the backup will occur in one of the following ways:
  - Enter a time in the **Time** field.
  - Select **Now** to enter the current time.
  - Select the clock icon and choose a time from the pop-up menu: **Now**, **Midnight**, **6 a.m.**, or **Noon**.
4. Select an FTP server from the **FTP server** dropdown menu. For information on configuring an FTP server, see [FTP servers on page 1](#).
5. Select **OK** to save your settings.

**To configure automatic log deletion:**

1. Under **Log Auto-Deletion**, select **Enable log auto-deletion**.
2. Use the **Auto-delete logs older than** field and dropdown menu to specify the number of either **day(s)**, **week(s)**, or **month(s)** after which a log will be deleted.
3. Select **OK** to save your settings.

**To configure logging to a FortiManager/FortiAnalyzer unit:**

1. Under **FortiManager/FortiAnalyzer**, select **Send logs to FortiManager/FortiAnalyzer**.
2. Enter the Internet-facing IP address of the FortiManager or FortiAnalyzer unit.

**To configure logging to a remote syslog server:**

1. Under **Remote Syslog**, select **Send logs to remote Syslog servers**.
2. Move the syslog servers to which the logs will be sent from the **Available syslog servers** box to the **Chosen syslog servers** box.  
For information on adding syslog servers, see [Syslog servers on page 200](#).
3. Select **OK** to save your settings.

## Syslog servers

Syslog servers can be used to store remote logs. To view the syslog server list, go to **Logging > Log Config > Syslog Servers**. A maximum of 20 syslog servers can be configured.

<b>Create New</b>	Add a new syslog server.
<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected syslog server or servers.
<b>Edit</b>	Edit the selected syslog server.
<b>Name</b>	The syslog server name on FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Server name/IP</b>	The server name or IP address, and port number.

**To add a syslog server:**

1. From the syslog servers list, select **Create New**.



2. Enter the following information:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the syslog server on FortiAuthenticator.
<b>Server name/IP</b>	Enter the syslog server name or IP address.
<b>Port</b>	Enter the syslog server port number. The default port is 514.
<b>Level</b>	Select a log level to store on the remote server from the dropdown menu. See <a href="#">Level on page 1</a> .
<b>Facility</b>	Select a facility from the dropdown menu.

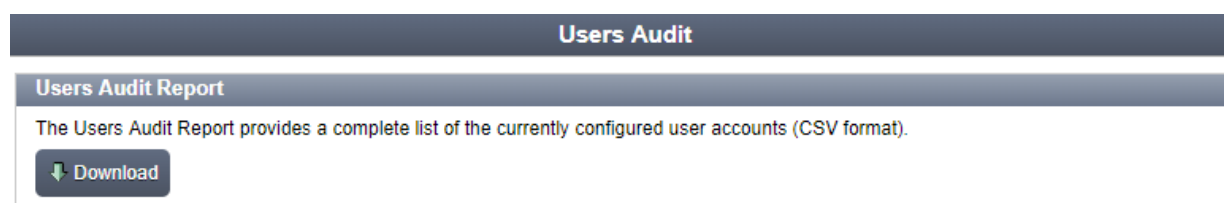
3. Select **OK** to add the syslog server.

## Audit reports

User audit reports can be generated in order to comply with audit requirements. These reports include various attributes for all users configured on the FortiAuthenticator.

### Users audit

To generate and download user audit reports, go to **Logging > Audit Reports > Users Audit** and select **Download**. A CSV format file will be saved to the computer.



The following attributes are included in the .csv file:

<b>username</b>	Username.
<b>user type</b>	Set to either <b>local</b> , <b>ldap</b> , or <b>radius</b> .
<b>remote server name</b>	Set to either <b>ldap</b> or <b>radius</b> , or empty for local.
<b>first name</b>	User's first name.
<b>last name</b>	User's last name.
<b>email address</b>	User's email address.
<b>active</b>	Set to either <b>t</b> for true/enabled or <b>f</b> for false/disabled.

<b>role</b>	Set to either <b>user</b> , <b>sponsor</b> , or <b>administrator</b> .
<b>admin profile</b>	One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Set to <b>full</b> if role is set to <b>administrator</b> with full permissions.</li><li>• Set to their admin profile names separated by "/" for multiple profiles (e.g. <b>logging/saml</b>) if <b>role</b> is set to <b>administrator</b> without full permissions.</li><li>• Empty is role is set to either <b>user</b> or <b>sponsor</b>.</li></ul>
<b>created</b>	Date and time of account creation.
<b>last used</b>	Date and time of last login.
<b>token type</b>	Type of token-based authentication.
<b>token info</b>	Token information.

# Troubleshooting

This chapter provides suggestions to resolve common problems encountered while configuring and using your FortiAuthenticator device, as well as information on viewing debug logs.

For more support, visit the [Fortinet Support](#) website.

Before starting, please ensure that your FortiAuthenticator device is plugged in to an appropriate, and functional, power source.

## Troubleshooting

The following table describes some of the basic issues that can occur while using your FortiAuthenticator device, and suggestions on how to solve said issues.

Problem	Suggestions
All user log in attempts fail, there is no response from the FortiAuthenticator device, and there are no entries in the system log.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check that the authentication client has been correctly configured. See <a href="#">Adding FortiAuthenticator to your network on page 1</a>.</li><li>• If the authentication client is not configured, all requests are silently dropped.</li><li>• Verify that traffic is reaching the FortiAuthenticator device.</li><li>• Check to see if there is an intervening firewall blocking 1812/UDP RADIUS authentication traffic, if the routing correct, if the authentication client is configured with the correct IP address for FortiAuthenticator, etc.</li></ul>
All user log in attempts fail with the message <b>RADIUS ACCESS-REJECT</b> , and <b>invalid password</b> shown in the logs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Verify that the authentication client secrets are identical to those on FortiAuthenticator.</li></ul>
Generally, user log in attempts are successful, however an individual user authentication attempt fails with <b>invalid password</b> shown in the logs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Reset the user's password and try again. See <a href="#">Editing a user on page 1</a>.</li><li>• Have the user privately show their password to the administrator to check for unexpected characters (possibly due to keyboard regionalization issues).</li></ul>

## Problem

Generally, user log in attempts are successful, however an individual user authentication attempt fails with **invalid token** shown in the logs.

## Suggestions

- Verify that the user is not trying to use a previously used PIN. Tokens are one time passwords, so you cannot log in twice with the same PIN.
- Verify that the time and timezone on FortiAuthenticator are correct and, preferably, synchronized using NTP. See [Configuring the system time, time zone, and date on page 1](#).
- Verify that the token is correctly synchronized with FortiAuthenticator, and verify the drift by synchronizing the token. See [FortiToken drift adjustment on page 1](#).
- Verify the user is using the token assigned to them (validate the serial number against FortiAuthenticator configuration). See [User management on page 1](#).
- If the user is using an email or SMS token, verify it is being used within the valid timeout period. See [Lockouts on page 1](#).

## Debug logs

Extended debug logs can be accessed by using your web browser to browse to

<https://<FortiAuthenticator-IP-Address>/debug>.

Service: LDAP Max. log files size: 200 KB Search in the log

LDAP Logs

Showing the last 100 lines

```

2017-03-14T08:44:26.988420-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map(): objectClass "facPerson":#012 keytbl="auth_user" keycol="id"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988584-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: expect_return: add=0, del=0; attributes:
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988599-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: objectClass: id="3" name="organization" keytbl="organizations" keycol="id" create_proc=""
create_keyval="" delete_proc="" expect_return="0"create_hint=""
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988603-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map(): objectClass "organization":#012 keytbl="organizations" keycol="id"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988607-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: expect_return: add=0, del=0; attributes:
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988609-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: objectClass: id="5" name="country" keytbl="countries" keycol="id" create_proc=""
create_keyval="" delete_proc="" expect_return="0"create_hint=""
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988612-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map(): objectClass "country":#012 keytbl="countries" keycol="id"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988616-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: expect_return: add=0, del=0; attributes:
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988622-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: objectClass: id="6" name="organizationalUnit" keytbl="organizationalunits" keycol="id"
create_proc="" create_keyval="" delete_proc="" expect_return="0"create_hint=""
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988625-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map(): objectClass "organizationalUnit":#012 keytbl="organizationalunits"
keycol="id"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988628-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: expect_return: add=0, del=0; attributes:
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988631-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: objectClass: id="7" name="facAuthFacgroup" keytbl="fac_auth_facgroup" keycol="id" create_proc=""
create_keyval="" delete_proc="" expect_return="0"create_hint=""
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988788-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map(): objectClass "facGroup":#012 keytbl="fac_auth_facgroup" keycol="id"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988796-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: expect_return: add=0, del=0; attributes:
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988801-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map(): at_query "SELECT
name,sel_expr,from_tbls,join_where,add_proc,delete_proc,param_order,expect_return,sel_expr_u FROM ldap_attr_mappings WHERE oc_map_id=?"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.988804-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_oc_get_attr_mapping(): executing at_query#012 "SELECT
name,sel_expr,from_tbls,join_where,add_proc,delete_proc,param_order,expect_return,sel_expr_u FROM ldap_attr_mappings WHERE oc_map_id=?"#012 for objectClass
"country":#012 with param oc_id=5
2017-03-14T08:44:26.989693-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: attributeType: name="c" sel_expr="countries.code" from="countries" join_where="" add_proc=""
delete_proc="" sel_expr_u=""
2017-03-14T08:44:26.989705-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_oc_get_attr_mapping(): preconstructed query "SELECT countries.code AS c FROM countries
WHERE countries.id=? ORDER BY c"
2017-03-14T08:44:26.989709-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_load_schema_map("country"): autoadding 'objectClass' and 'ref' mappings
2017-03-14T08:44:26.989711-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: backsql_oc_get_attr_mapping(): executing at_query#012 "SELECT
name,sel_expr,from_tbls,join_where,add_proc,delete_proc,param_order,expect_return,sel_expr_u FROM ldap_attr_mappings WHERE oc_map_id=?"#012 for objectClass
"facGroup":#012 with param oc_id=7
2017-03-14T08:44:26.990036-07:00 FortiAuthenticator slapd[783]: attributeType: name="cn" sel_expr="fac_auth_facgroup.name" from="fac_auth_facgroup"

```

Show 100 lines

<b>Service</b>	<p>Select the service whose logs are shown from the dropdown menu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>FSSO</b></li> <li>• <b>FSSO (Filtered)</b></li> <li>• <b>GUI</b></li> <li>• <b>HA</b></li> <li>• <b>LB HA Sync</b></li> <li>• <b>LDAP</b></li> <li>• <b>Push Authentication Service</b></li> <li>• <b>RADIUS Accounting</b></li> <li>• <b>RADIUS Authentication</b></li> <li>• <b>SNMP</b></li> <li>• <b>Syslog SSO</b></li> <li>• <b>Web Server</b></li> <li>• <b>CLI Packet Capture (tcpdumpfile)</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>CLI Packet Capture (tcpdumpfile)</b> service is only available when the <code>tcpdumpfile</code> command has been entered using SSH or Telnet, or through the CLI Console if a FortiAuthenticator is installed on a FortiHypervisor. For more information, see <a href="#">CLI commands on page 1</a>.</p>
<b>Max. log files size</b>	To have access to a longer history of debug log files, a dropdown menu has been added for changing the maximum log file size, up to a maximum of 50 MB. Note that this is available for only certain debug log types.
<b>Enter debug mode</b>	If RADIUS Authentication is selected as the service, the option to enter the debug mode is available. See <a href="#">RADIUS debugging on page 205</a> .
<b>Search</b>	Enter a search term in the search field, then select <b>Search</b> to search the debug logs.
<b>Page navigation</b>	Use the <b>First Page</b> , <b>Previous Page</b> , <b>Next Page</b> , and <b>Last Page</b> icons to navigated through the logs.
<b>Show</b>	Select the number of lines to show per page from the dropdown menu. The options are: <b>100</b> (default), <b>250</b> , and <b>500</b> .

## RADIUS debugging

RADIUS authentication debugging mode can be accessed to debug RADIUS authentication issues.

From the **Service** dropdown menu, select **RADIUS Authentication** and select **Enter debug mode** from the toolbar.

Service: **RADIUS Authentication** Max. log files size: **200 KB** Exit debug mode **DEBUGGING MODE ACTIVE** Search in the log

---

**Send Authentication**

Username

Password

**OK**

---

**RADIUS Authentication Logs**

Showing the last 500 lines

```

2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Setting 'Auth-Type := FACAUTH'
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: [pap] WARNING! No "known good" password found for the
user. Authentication may fail because of this.
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: # Executing group from file /usr/etc/raddb/sites-enabled
/default
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Realm: (null) (default realm id: 1) username: admin
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Realm not specified, default goes to FAC local user
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Local user found: admin
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Authentication OK
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Setting 'Post-Auth-Type := FACAUTH'
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Updated auth log 'admin': Local administrator
authentication with no token successful
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: # Executing group from file /usr/etc/raddb/sites-enabled
/default
2014-08-06T13:23:48-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Waking up in 4.9 seconds.
2014-08-06T13:23:53-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Ready to process requests.
2014-08-06T13:30:09-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Ready to process requests.
2014-08-06T13:30:09-07:00 FortiAuthenticator radiusd[22242]: Exiting normally.

```

Show 500 lines

Enter the username and password and select **OK** to test the RADIUS authentication and view the authentication response and returned attributes.

Select **Exit debug mode** to deactivate the debugging mode.

## TCP stack hardening

Configure the number of TCP SYNACK retries for the Linux kernel by accessing:

[https://<FortiAuthenticator-IP-Address>/debug/tcp\\_tuning](https://<FortiAuthenticator-IP-Address>/debug/tcp_tuning)

**Edit TCP Settings**

TCP SYNACK retries (1-255):

**OK**

From here, enter the number of retries between 1 - 255 (default is 3).

# LDAP filter syntax

This chapter outlines some basic filter syntax that is used to select users and groups in LDAP User Import, Dynamic LDAP Groups, and Remote User Sync Rules.

Filters are constructed using logical operators:

=	Equal to
~=	Approximately equal to
<=	Lexicographically less than or equal to
>=	Lexicographically greater than or equal to
&	AND
	OR
!	NOT

Filters can consist of multiple elements, such as `(&(filter1)(filter2))`.

More information about the query syntax of AD filters, see the following web sites:

- [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa746475\(v=vs.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa746475(v=vs.85).aspx)
- <http://social.technet.microsoft.com/wiki/contents/articles/5392.active-directory-ldap-syntax-filters.aspx>

## Examples

The following examples are for a Windows 2008 AD server with the domain **corp.example.com**, default domain administrators and users, and an additional group called FW\_Admns:

- Users (CN) = atano, pjfry, tleela, tbother
- FW\_Admns (Security Group) = atano, tbother

An unfiltered browse will return all results from the query, including system and computer accounts. To prevent this and only return user accounts, apply the filter `(objectClass=person)` or `(objectCategory=user)`.

Even if unfiltered, only user accounts will be imported, so this is only required to clean up the results that are displayed in the GUI.

To filter and return only members of the security group: `(&(objectCategory=user)(memberOf=CN=FW_Admin,DC=corp,DC=example,DC=com))`.

It is not possible to use the filter to limit results to CNs or OUs. To achieve this, you must change the Base DN in the LDAP Server configuration. For example, to return only users from the CompanyA OU, create an LDAP Server entry with the following Base DN: `OU=CompanyA,DC=corp,DC=example,DC=com`.

## Caveats

Users do not always have a **memberOf** property for their primary group, this means that querying system groups, such as Domain Users, may return zero results. This can be confusing as these are often the first queries to be tried, and can lead the user to think the filter syntax is incorrect.

For example: `(memberOf=CN=Domain Users,CN=Domain Admins,DC=corp,DC=example,DC=com)` will return no valid results.

To return all users in such a group, the filter can be made against the ID value of the Primary Group. So, for Domain Users (Group ID = 513), the filter would be: `(primaryGroupId=513)`.





Copyright© 2018 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features, or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.